



Charles Stack  
Patrick Dobbs

# Essentials of **Paediatric** Intensive Care



Essentials of  
Paediatric Intensive Care

# Essentials of Paediatric Intensive Care

**C G Stack, FRCA**

*Director of Intensive Care  
Sheffield Children's Hospital*

**P Dobbs, FRCA**

*Consultant Anaesthetist  
Royal Hallamshire Hospital, Sheffield*

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, São Paulo

Cambridge University Press

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK

Published in the United States of America by Cambridge University Press, New York

[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

Information on this title: [www.cambridge.org/9781841100531](http://www.cambridge.org/9781841100531)

© Greenwich Medical Media Limited 2003

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provision of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published in print format 2004

ISBN-13 978-0-511-16583-2 eBook (NetLibrary)

ISBN-10 0-511-16583-8 eBook (NetLibrary)

ISBN-13 978-1-841-10053-1 paperback

ISBN-10 1-841-10053-6 paperback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate.

# CONTENTS

	Preface	vii
<b>Section 1</b>	<b>Basic Principles of PICU</b>	<b>1</b>
Chapter 1	Differences between the child, the neonate and the adult	3
Chapter 2	Neonatal problems in the PICU	10
Chapter 3	Resuscitation	14
Chapter 4	The structured approach to the seriously injured child	20
Chapter 5	Airway and ventilation	24
Chapter 6	Circulation and rhythm disturbances	37
Chapter 7	Sedation and analgesia in PICU	43
Chapter 8	Fluid, electrolytes and nutrition	50
Chapter 9	Transport of the critically ill child	61
Chapter 10	Death on the PICU	65
<b>Section 2</b>	<b>Specific PICU Problems</b>	<b>69</b>
Chapter 11	Respiratory disease	71
Chapter 12	Cardiac disease on the PICU <i>Monica Stokes – Birmingham Children's Hospital</i>	83
Chapter 13	Dysrhythmias and myocardial disease	95
Chapter 14	Neurological and neuro-muscular disease	106
Chapter 15	Gastrointestinal and hepatic disorders	122
Chapter 16	Renal disease	129
Chapter 17	Haematology and oncology	134
Chapter 18	Endocrine disorders	138
Chapter 19	Inborn errors of metabolism	143
Chapter 20	Infection and related illness	146
Chapter 21	Trauma	155
Chapter 22	Poisoning	171
Chapter 23	Neonatal and other surgical patients in PICU	176
<b>Section 3</b>	<b>Drugs Used in Paediatric Intensive Care</b>	<b>179</b>
	Bibliography	222
	Index	223

---

## PREFACE

The aim of this book is to be a practical handbook providing easily accessible information for medical and nursing staff who are involved in looking after sick children. It is aimed at those who work for a short time in paediatric intensive care or look after sick children for short periods prior to retrieval to a paediatric intensive care unit. It is not intended to be a complete guide but rather a synopsis of the most salient points. With this in mind, we hope to have written it in an easily readable form.

The book is in three sections. The first is about basic principles of intensive care. The second section deals with specific conditions through different systems. The final section is a section on drugs which are commonly used in the critically ill child. We apologise for any omissions.

We would like to thank Dr Monica Stokes from Birmingham Children's Hospital for the chapter on Cardiac Problems on the PICU. We would also like to thank the editorial staff at GMM for their infinite patience and persistence. Finally we would like to thank Judy Needham for her secretarial assistance.

C G Stack  
P Dobbs

October 2003

---



# Section 1

## Basic Principles of PICU

---

## CHAPTER 1

### DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE CHILD, THE NEONATE AND THE ADULT

Children are not just small adults. Various anatomical, physiological and pharmacological differences occur. The differences are significant and there is a continuous and variable change from the neonate onwards. This chapter covers the relevant differences between neonates and adults.

#### **Anatomy and physiology**

##### *Airway*

Neonates have relative to adults:

- the cricoid ring which is the narrowest part of the airway in the child; the vocal cords are in the adult
- the cricoid cartilage which is a full ring of cartilage
- large tongue
- large omega shaped epiglottis
- anterior larynx which is at a higher level
- large head
- short trachea, greater angle of carina; left main bronchus more horizontal
- the nasal passage which is approximately the same size as the cricoid ring in children
- obligate nose breathers

##### *Problems/relevance*

- for basic airway management the head needs to be in the neutral position
- tend to be more difficult to intubate than older child or adult
- a straight bladed laryngoscope is needed to lift the epiglottis in children up to about 2 years of age to give a better view of the vocal cords
- uncuffed endotracheal tubes are used up to about 10 years of age to reduce the risk of sub-glottic oedema and long-term sub-glottic stenosis
- risk of endobronchial intubation (tubes too long)

##### *Breathing*

- alveoli increase mainly in number in infants and in size in older children
- bronchi have relatively more cartilage, less muscle and more glands
- small airway obstruction is more likely to be due to inflammation and oedema in infants and muscle spasm in older children

**Table 1.1** Respiratory rates in children by age

Age	Rate (breaths/min)
<1	30–40
1–2	25–35
2–5	25–30
5–12	20–25
>12	15–20
Adult	12–15

- ribs more horizontal
- breathing is diaphragmatic
- greater elasticity of chest wall
- the diaphragm and intercostal muscles have fewer Type I muscle fibres which are adapted for sustained activity
- leads to relatively earlier tiring of these muscles
- faster respiratory rate 30–40 bpm at birth (Table 1.1)
- respiration often irregular with apnoeas particularly in premature infants
- similar tidal volume, compliance per kg compared to adults
- neonates have higher oxygen consumption, higher closing volumes and increased V/Q mismatch leading to lower PaO<sub>2</sub>
- reduced oxygen reserve
- chemoreceptors have a more effective response to CO<sub>2</sub> rise than oxygen fall
- fall in oxygen tension stimulates respiration but only briefly in neonates
- surfactant production is reduced in premature babies, infant respiratory distress syndrome, bronchiolitis, adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), pulmonary oedema and pneumonia
- more likely to have respiratory rather than cardiac arrest

#### *Problems/relevance*

Signs of increased work of breathing include:

- increased respiratory rate
- intercostal, subcostal recession due to the elastic chest wall
- use of accessory muscles, nasal flaring, grunting
- sweating and anxiety
- diaphragmatic splinting (e.g. air in stomach) may compromise respiration
- 50% of airway resistance is in the nasal passages
- tendency to have respiratory failure/arrest when critically ill

**Table 1.2** Pulse rate and blood pressure by age

Age	Heart rate (bpm)	Systolic blood pressure (mmHg)
<1	110–160	70–90
1–2	100–150	80–95
2–5	95–140	80–100
5–12	80–120	90–110
>12	60–100	100–120

- in particular ex-premature neonates are prone to apnoeas
- bradycardia occurs often with hypoxia

### Cardiovascular

- cardiac output is heart rate dependent in neonates
- stroke volume is fixed due to less compliant left ventricle
- relatively less intracellular calcium in neonates
- the myocardium is therefore more sensitive to parenterally administered calcium
- closure of foramen ovale and ductus arteriosus normally occurs during first 48 h of life with pulmonary vascular resistance and arterial pressure falling to normal by 2–4 weeks of age
- assessment in the child includes central capillary refill time (normal less than 2 s) or core-peripheral temperature difference (less than 2°C). Beware cold peripheries leading to a longer capillary refill time.
- palpation of the fontanelle can assist in assessment of fluid status in infants
- systolic blood pressure can be estimated by the formula:

$$80 + (\text{age in years} \times 2) \text{ (Table 1.2)}$$

### Problems/relevance

- hypotension is a pre-terminal sign
- response to fluid loss is tachycardia and vasoconstriction, leading to increased capillary refill time and sometimes mottling and air hunger
- transitional circulation can persist precipitated by cold, hypoxia or acidosis. This leads to worsening hypoxia. Treatment is by hyperventilation with 100% oxygen, correction of precipitating factors, inotropes or vasodilators may be required.

### CNS

- relatively larger brain in newborn and infants
- larger proportion of cardiac output goes to the brain
- myelination increases during first 2 years of life

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- low myelin sheath thickness leads to slower nerve conduction
- blood-brain barrier is less well formed

### *Problems/relevance*

- greater passage of some drugs especially opiates and barbiturates across blood-brain barrier
- more sensitive to sedative and analgesic drugs

### *Neuro-muscular junction*

- formation of motor end plates is not complete at birth
- takes longer to recover after stimulation than in adults
- in the first few days of life, the immature neuro-muscular junction leads to greater sensitivity to non-depolarising muscle relaxants and relative resistance to depolarising relaxants (suxamethonium)

### *Renal*

- immature at birth. Rapid improvement occurs after birth but the kidney is less efficient in premature infants.
- the proportion of cardiac output to the kidneys increases from 4–6% at birth to 20–25% when mature
- more flow to medulla and juxta-medullary apparatus than cortex in the newborn
- leads to difficulty in excreting sodium
- the low blood flow is the cause of low glomerular filtration rate (about one third that of adults) and therefore reduced excretion of some drugs
- difficult to cope with water load
- unable to concentrate urine as efficiently
- ability to excrete acid reduced in first week of life

### *Temperature control*

- skin fully developed by 32 weeks gestation
- greater surface area to volume ratio than in adults
- head has a greater surface area leading to heat loss
- also fluid losses greater in premature infants compared to term infants. In addition the greater surface area to weight ratio of infants over children leads to greater fluid loss.
- main heat production is by non-shivering thermogenesis by increasing brown fat metabolism in the first few hours of life. This leads to increased oxygen consumption.
- sweat glands more inefficient and therefore easier for the infant to become hyperthermic
- in colder environmental temperatures, heat loss occurs by radiation, conduction and convection

- prematurity increases heat losses for the same environmental temperature compared to term infant

#### *Problems/relevance*

- quickly cool down if left exposed
- need to keep warm either by wrapping or heating devices
- increased fluid requirements in neonates relative to older children

#### *Blood*

- blood volume is increased in neonates (90 ml/kg)
- haemoglobin F (HbF) predominant at birth. Only small amounts remain by 6 months of age.
- HbF has a greater affinity for oxygen than haemoglobin A
- oxygen dissociation curve is shifted to the left
- therefore oxygen is less readily given up to tissues
- physiological anaemia is maximal at 3 months and tends to be lower the smaller the infant at birth

### **Pharmacology**

Pharmacokinetics is the quantitative assessment of absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of a drug. Also described as how the body deals with a drug.

Pharmacodynamics is the biochemical and physiological effects of drugs or what the drug does to the body.

- To produce a predictable and safe pharmacological response it is important to understand the physiological differences that occur as neonates evolve to children and then adults.
- In general for many drugs, there is a period of sensitivity in neonates followed by a relative resistance in infants and young children and then tending towards adult doses in adolescence.
- Remember that ill children are likely to be generally more sensitive to most drugs.

### **Pharmacokinetics**

#### *Absorption*

- The intravenous route avoids problems with variability in drug absorption.
- Inhalation: The combination of a higher alveolar ventilation and relatively large cardiac output of the neonate causes a quicker equilibration of alveolar to tissue concentration of drug than in adulthood.
- Oral/nasogastric routes: The rate-limiting step for absorption for the upper gastrointestinal tract is the speed of gastric emptying. This is altered in patients who are ill, have suffered trauma or received drugs

that reduce gastric mobility such as morphine. The acidity of the stomach is lower in the newborn infant (higher pH).

- Rectal routes: The rectal route can be useful. Absorption can vary with pH (normal 7–12).
- Intramuscular: Children have a lower muscle mass as compared with adults but a higher cardiac output which ensures a reliable and rapid onset of action of intramuscular drugs. In conditions with a reduced cardiac output, onset may be delayed. The intramuscular route should be avoided as much as possible due to the dislike of painful injections.

### *Distribution*

- When a drug is absorbed it will be distributed according to blood flow and the drug's solubility in that tissue.
- Neonates differ considerably from adults in that as the cardiac output is double that of adults, the circulating volume is relatively less leading to a much more rapid circulation time.
- The relative volumes of body compartments are also very different. The extracellular space in a neonate is 45% of body weight compared with only 20% in adults. Total body water is 80% in the neonate dropping to 55% in the adult.
- It would be expected that neonates would need a larger loading dose but due to the increased sensitivity at receptor level this is not the case.

### *Protein binding*

- Infants have lower levels of proteins such as albumin, and binding sites are occupied by endogenous substances such as bilirubin. Drugs with a high affinity for albumin may displace bilirubin.
- Basic drugs such as opioids and local anaesthetics are bound to  $\alpha_1$ -glycoprotein which only reaches adult levels at about 6 months of age. Hence in early life these drugs will have a much more potent effect due to the higher free fraction in the plasma.

### *Elimination*

- Most drugs are metabolised by the liver to a more water soluble form and excreted by the kidneys.
- The liver is relatively large at birth, thus Phase I reactions in the liver (oxidation, hydrolysis and reduction) are relatively mature early on in life while Phase II reactions (mainly conjugation) develop more slowly.
- The kidney is immature at birth and takes up to 2 years to develop fully and this may delay excretion. Glomerular filtration rate is about one third that of adults at birth. Secretion and absorption within the tubule is less leading to reduced elimination of drugs such as penicillin and gentamicin.



**Pharmacodynamics**

**Receptors:** The differential maturity and numbers of receptors may explain some of the differences in dose requirements in neonates. For example neonates are particularly sensitive to non-depolarising neuro-muscular agents and resistant to depolarising neuro-muscular agents.

## CHAPTER 2

## NEONATAL PROBLEMS IN THE PICU

Although the majority of neonates or small infants are cared for on a neonatal intensive care unit (NICU) there are a substantial number which are cared for on a PICU. These will include those undergoing cardiac or general surgery (see separate chapters) and medical patients following discharge from the NICU. In particular, development of respiratory disorders (e.g. bronchiolitis) are common. The aim of this chapter is to consider some of the particular problems of neonates which may be encountered on the PICU.

*Respiration*

- foetal lung fluid production reduces during delivery
- the first breath generates a negative pressure in the lungs of up to 40 cm H<sub>2</sub>O allowing air into the alveoli
- primary apnoea may occur due to asphyxia, prematurity, sepsis, trauma, congenital malformations or depressant drugs
- if respiration does not commence gasping occurs followed by terminal apnoea
- appropriate resuscitation should reverse this situation
- use APGAR scoring at 1 and 5 min to assess (see Table 2.1)
- respiratory compliance rapidly improves in the first hour of life

*Respiratory distress syndrome*

- follows surfactant deficiency in premature neonates
- symptoms are: tachypnoea, increased work of breathing, increased oxygen requirements within 4 h of birth
- leads to reticulo-granular appearance on X-ray
- injury because of infection or ventilation may lead to pulmonary interstitial emphysema (PIE) and later to chronic disease: broncho-pulmonary dysplasia (BPD)

**Table 2.1** APGAR score is calculated at 1 and 5 min after delivery

Clinical feature	0	1	2
Heart rate	<60	60–100	>100
Respiration	Absent	Gasping or irregular	Regular
Muscle tone	Limp	Diminished or normal	Normal with active movements
Response to stimulation	Nil	Grimace	Cry
Colour	White	Blue	Pink

- early use of surfactant, nasal continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) and high frequency oscillation has improved outcome
- complications include pneumothorax, pulmonary haemorrhage and pulmonary hypertension

### **Cardiovascular**

#### *Patent ductus arteriosus*

- the ductus arteriosus usually closes within the first few days of life in response to a raised  $\text{PaO}_2$
- it may remain patent (PDA) due to prematurity, illness or hypoxia
- closure may lead to the unmasking of congenital cardiac disease (see Chapter 12)
- symptoms include tachypnoea, pulmonary oedema and a continuous variable murmur heard posteriorly
- diagnosis by echocardiography
- treatment: medical by indomethacin, surgical via thoracotomy

#### *Persistent foetal circulation*

- the first breath expands the lungs, reducing the pulmonary vascular resistance and increasing the oxygen content of the blood
- pulmonary blood flow increases leading to an increase in left atrial pressure and closure of the foramen ovale
- cessation of flow to the placenta via the umbilical arteries leads to an increase in the systemic vascular resistance
- raised oxygen tension helps reduce pulmonary vascular resistance and should promote closure of the ductus arteriosus
- however, some conditions can lead to persistent foetal circulation or pulmonary hypertension of the newborn
- hypoxia, cold, pulmonary hypoplasia (congenital diaphragmatic hernia) predispose
- can also occur following the early post-operative period in neonatal cardiac surgery
- treatment includes hyperventilation with 100% oxygen, use of inhaled nitric oxide, treatment of the cause

#### *Environment*

- premature neonates lose heat rapidly and need to be kept in a thermoneutral environment
- tend to be unable to respond to other stresses and become ill more quickly
- in general premature neonates do not respond well to handling and this should be kept to a minimum

#### *Gastrointestinal*

- physiological jaundice occurs normally after birth:
  - appears after 48 h

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- peaks by 5 days
- returns to normal by 10 days (14 in the premature neonate)
- unconjugated bilirubin
- can be abnormal – occurs too early, rises too fast, persists too long (Table 2.2)
- investigation includes blood cultures, virology, liver function tests (LFT's), Coombs test and appropriate tests if an inborn error of metabolism is suspected
- treatment of conjugated bilirubinaemia is dependent on age and bilirubin level
- phototherapy splits unconjugated bilirubin allowing excretion in urine and bile
- if the level is higher exchange transfusion may be required

*Necrotising enterocolitis*

- predominately premature infants, 3–10 days post-natal
- mortality 30–40%
- cause not definitely known but usually occurs in enterally fed babies and there are occasional epidemics
- early signs include abdominal distension, vomiting, bloody stools, apnoea or shock

**Table 2.2** Causes of hyperbilirubinaemia in neonates

Type	Effect	Cause	Specific
Unconjugated	Intra-vascular haemolysis	Blood group incompatibility	Rhesus (Coombs +) ABO (Coombs –)
		Red cell fragility	Spherocytosis
		Inborn errors	G6PD, pyruvate kinase deficiency
	Polycythaemia	Twin to twin transfusion Placental transfusion Chronic hypoxia	
	Other red cell breakdown Failure of conjugation	Bruising from birth injury Inhibition Inborn error	Breech delivery, forceps Breast milk Gilberts, Dubin-Johnson, Rotor, Crijer-Najer
Conjugated	Other	Dehydration Sepsis Inborn errors	
			Galactosaemia, tyrosinaemia $\alpha_1$ -antitrypsin deficiency
	Obstruction Infection	Biliary atresia Hepatitis	

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- may appear septic with disseminated intra-vascular coagulation (DIC), neutropaenia and thrombocytopenia
- abdominal X-ray may reveal gas in the bowel wall or portal venous system; or free gas in the peritoneum
- treatment is supportive with IV fluids, inotropes, ventilation as necessary
- cessation of enteral feeding, TPN
- broad spectrum antibiotics
- review for bowel perforation
- surgical approach includes peritoneal drainage, or bowel resection often with defunctioning ileostomy

**CNS***Intra-ventricular haemorrhage*

- usually affects very small infants as a complication of severe illness including hypotension, hypoxia and acidosis
- diagnosis is by cranial ultrasound
- no treatment is available, therefore prevention is by avoiding precipitating causes including handling
- Table 2.3 describes the grades of intra-ventricular haemorrhage which can occur. Grades I and II usually are subsequently asymptomatic

*Retinopathy of prematurity (retrolental fibroplasia)*

- disease of immature retina
- occurs because the normal growth of retinal vessels ceases and abnormal proliferation occurs into the vitreous humour. This can lead to retinal detachment and blindness.
- screen infants less than 30 weeks gestation or 1300 g birth weight
- also screen infants less than 35 weeks or 1800 g following supplemental oxygen
- consideration of this should be taken into account in the PICU, maintaining lower saturations in those babies than one would normally accept

**Table 2.3** Grades of intra-ventricular haemorrhage

---

I	• arises from germinal matrix on floor of lateral ventricle but does not extend into the CSF
II	• extends into CSF without ventricular distension
III	• associated with ventricular distension
	• often symptomatic:
	– systemic collapse with apnoea, acidosis, hypoxia, hypotension
	– seizures
IV	• similar appearance to III with echogenicity in the peri-ventricular white matter
	• long-term hydrocephalus may arise
	• long-term outcome poor

---

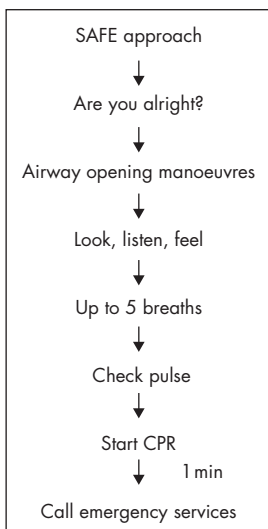
## CHAPTER 3

### RESUSCITATION

A cardiac arrest occurs when there is an absence of a central pulse. In children a cardiac arrest is usually secondary to hypoxia or hypovolaemia. Rarely is it due to a structural defect except in neonates.

Management is divided into basic life support (Figure 3.1) and advanced life support.

- ‘SAFE’ approach
  - S**hout for help
  - A**pproach with care
  - F**ree from danger
  - E**valuate ABC
- Stimulate and check responsiveness
  - Ask ‘are you alright’ – move child’s arm, but take care if any suspected trauma to avoid cervical spine movement by holding head still



**Figure 3.1** Basic life support

- Open airway with chin lift or jaw thrust (if suspected cervical injury)
- Check for breathing
  - Look for chest movement
  - Listen for breath sounds
  - Feel for exhaled breath
  - If breathing place the child in the recovery position
  - If not breathing give two effective breaths out of five attempts
- Check pulse for 10 s
  - brachial for infant
  - central (carotid or femoral) for child

If pulse  $>60$  bpm within 10 s check for signs of breathing, if no breaths continue with rescue breathing.

- If inadequate circulation or no pulse commence chest compressions

#### *Infant*

- 1 fingerbreadth below inter-nipple line
- depress sternum using with two fingers by one third of depth of child's chest
- continue at a rate of 100 bpm
- cycle of 5 compressions to 1 breath

#### *Small child $<8$ years*

- lower half of sternum one fingerbreadth above xiphisternum depress sternum using the heel of one hand by approximately one third of depth of child's chest
- cycle of 5 compressions to 1 breath

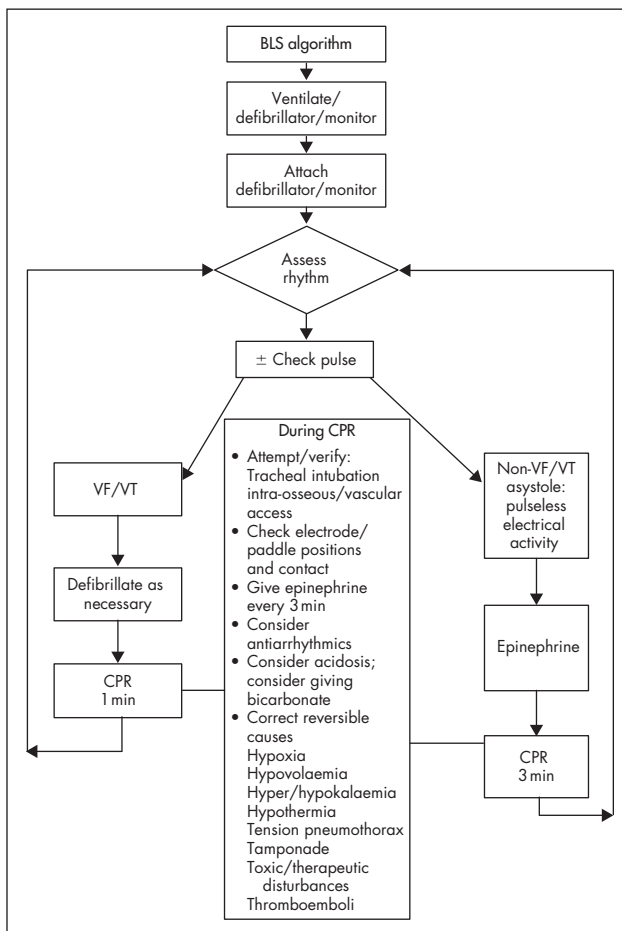
#### *Larger child $>8$ years*

- lower half of sternum (2 fingerbreadths above xiphisternum)
- depress sternum using the heels of both hands with fingers interlocked
- sternum should be depressed by approximately one third of depth of child's chest
- 15 compressions to 2 breaths

In infants an alternative method for chest compressions when there is more than one rescuer is to encircle the child's chest with your hands and depress the sternum with both thumbs.

Continue resuscitation for 1 min and then go for help if alone, otherwise continue until help has arrived.

*Advanced life support*



**Figure 3.2** Paediatric advanced life support algorithm (from Resuscitation Council (UK) guidelines)



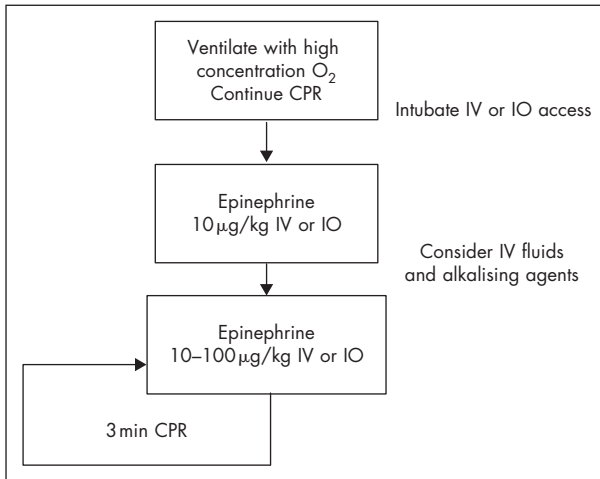


Figure 3.3 Protocol for asystole

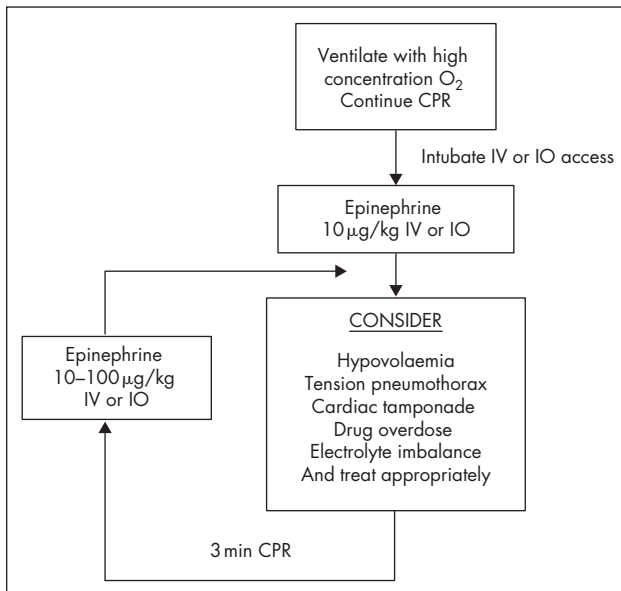
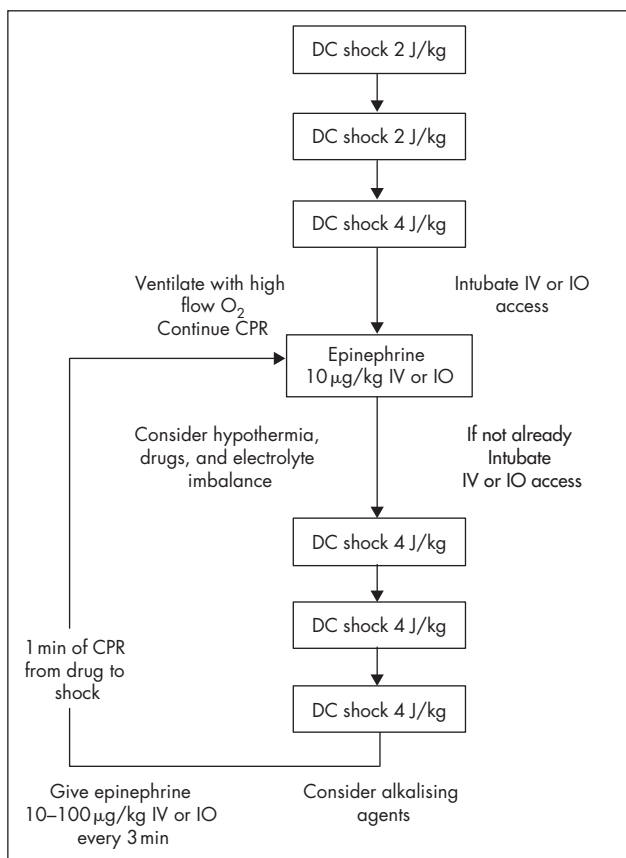


Figure 3.4 Protocol for pulseless electrical activity



**Figure 3.5** Protocol for ventricular fibrillation and pulseless ventricular tachycardia

Figures 3.2–3.5 give the algorithms for advanced life support and the commonest cardiac arrest scenarios in children: asystole, pulseless electrical activity and ventricular fibrillation.

### *Epinephrine (adrenaline)*

Dose:

- venous or intra-osseous access: 10 µg/kg (0.1 ml/kg of 1:10 000 solution)
- no venous or intra-osseous access consider giving 100 µg/kg (1 ml/kg of 1:10 000 solution) via endotracheal tube

- higher doses (up to 100 µg/kg) may be given if there is intra-arterial blood pressure monitoring or if the arrest is secondary to extreme vasodilation, i.e. sepsis, anaphylaxis

Epinephrine is used to increase aortic diastolic pressure and thus improve coronary perfusion during cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (CPR).

#### *Alkalising agents*

Routine use of sodium bicarbonate has not been shown to be of benefit during cardiac arrests. It may be considered in prolonged arrests with severe metabolic acidosis and established ongoing ventilation. Dose 1 ml/kg of 8.4% solution.

#### *Intra-venous fluids*

20 ml/kg of crystalloid should be given if there is no response to the initial dose of epinephrine.

#### *Anti-arrhythmic drugs*

Amiodarone is the drug of choice in shock resistant VF and pulseless VT. Dose is 5 mg/kg IV as a bolus.

Allow 1 min for any drug to reach the heart.

## CHAPTER 4

### THE STRUCTURED APPROACH TO THE SERIOUSLY INJURED CHILD

Trauma is the commonest cause of death in children over the age of one comprising approximately a quarter of all deaths in this age group. A trimodal distribution of deaths is described:

- within a few minutes due to injuries incompatible with life
- within a few hours due to respiratory or cardiovascular failure or raised intra-cranial pressure. These children will die without prompt intervention.
- within days due to multi-organ failure or infection which may be prevented by appropriate intensive care

The majority of deaths are associated with significant head injury.

When assessing and treating children, a system that ensures rapid assessment and identification of all problems with prompt resuscitation should be used. Effective communication and smooth transition of care to other professionals is necessary. A detailed secondary survey should be used. Life threatening injuries must be treated immediately when discovered.

#### Initial assessment – the primary survey

##### *Airway*

- Relieve airway obstruction – use jaw thrust rather than chin lift as this maintains the cervical spine in-line
- Check for foreign materials, e.g. food, vomit, blood, teeth under direct vision
- Stabilise the cervical spine to avoid the effects of spinal cord damage. Always assume there might be damage until proven otherwise.
- If intubation is required, rapid sequence induction should be used because of the risk of gastric aspiration. In-line stabilisation of the cervical spine by a second person should be undertaken. Oral intubation should be performed because the risks of nasal intubation include further damage, bleeding or potential infection if there is a base of skull fracture.
- Give 100% oxygen

Problems include:

- Injury to face and neck may complicate intubation due to bone fragments, haematoma, oedema
- Fractured larynx may occur with a neck injury. Loss of the airway on sedation and paralysis may occur.

*Cervical spine*

- This has to be considered at the same time as the airway. Once it is established that the airway is clear the cervical spine should be immobilised using a hard collar, sandbags and tape.
- Cervical cord injury is rare in children, but it may occur without radiological abnormality because of the flexibility of the cervical spine (Significant cervical injury without radiological abnormality – SCIWORA)
- Lateral X-ray of the cervical spine needs to be part of the primary assessment of the injury
- Injury may not be apparent even if a cervical collar is in place
- Pseudosubluxation of C2 on C3 and of C3 on C4 can occur in up to 10% of normal children
- Most injuries occur through ligaments or discs, most commonly at C1–3 due to the large head on relatively weak neck muscles or at C7/T1
- Cervical spine injury can only be adequately excluded by a normal clinical neurological examination and the absence of pain in the neck
- MRI of the cervical spine may help in patients who are unable to communicate
- Cervical spine stabilisation should be maintained during transport, log rolling and waking
- The hard collar does cause an increase in venous pressure which may compromise cerebral perfusion pressure and therefore can be removed if the head is kept in-line particularly if the patient is sedated and paralysed by neuro-muscular blocking drugs

*Breathing*

Once the airway is secure then assessment of breathing can occur

- look for the work of breathing
  - presence of recession
  - respiratory rate
  - respiratory noises
  - accessory muscle use
- look for the efficiency of breathing
  - equal breath sounds
  - tracheal deviation
  - open chest wounds
- look for the effects of inadequate breathing on other systems
  - reduced consciousness
  - poor circulation and skin colour
  - high/low heart rate

**Table 4.1** Treatment of breathing

- 
- 100% O<sub>2</sub> via mask with reservoir bag
  - Bag and mask ventilation
  - Intubation and ventilation
- 

**Table 4.2** The AVPU scale

- 
- A – Alert
  - V – Respond to voice
  - P – Respond to pain
  - U – Unresponsive
- 

If there is a deficiency in the breathing assessment this should be addressed prior to assessing the circulation (Table 4.1).

#### *Circulation*

- Rapid assessment of circulation – heart rate, capillary refill time, pulse volume
- Consider also blood pressure, skin colour and temperature, respiratory rate and mental status
- Remember systolic blood pressure is maintained relatively late in the shocked state

Signs of significant blood loss are:

- tachycardia
- cool pale or mottled skin
- tachypnoea
- mental agitation

Signs of severe blood loss are:

- tachycardia/bradycardia
- falling BP
- sighing respiration
- reduced conscious level

Vital signs vary with age in children (see Chapter 1 for the normal values).

#### *Treatment*

- 2 large IV cannulae
- Bloods for FBC, U + E, X-match, glucose
- Fluid bolus 20 ml/kg, 0.9% NaCl
- Fluid bolus 20 ml/kg colloid or crystalloid
- Blood 20 ml/kg
- Remember to consider obvious sites of blood loss that can be rapidly controlled by a tourniquet, e.g. crushed foot
- Urgent surgery may be needed, e.g. for ruptured vessels

*Disability*

The initial assessment of mental disability is with the AVPU scale (Table 4.2). The scale is easy to repeat and consistent.

- Pupillary signs and posture also have to be assessed
- More definitive assessment of the neurological status requires use of the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) (see Chapter 14)
- P on the AVPU scale approximates to a GCS of 8 suggesting that intubation in order to protect the airway should be considered

*Exposure*

Full assessment of the child should occur but facilities to prevent the child becoming cold should be available. Avoid embarrassment.

*X-rays*

X-rays of the lateral cervical spine, chest and pelvis should be taken as part of the primary survey.

*Detailed assessment – the secondary survey*

- Following the initial assessment and resuscitation the clinician should ensure that a full history is obtained
- A detailed clinical examination from head to foot should be performed including log rolling and a management plan formed. This needs to include fundoscopy and any other X-rays required.
- Urinary catheter and nasogastric tube placement should be considered
- If the child deteriorates at any time then revert to the initial ABC survey and resuscitation measures as outlined above
- CT of the brain should be undertaken if required. This may require a general anaesthetic. At the same time consider an abdominal CT preferably double contrast to exclude injury to the abdominal contents.

*Analgesia*

Morphine 0.1 mg/kg IV should be considered for analgesia. This should be titrated against response and be dependent to some extent on the neurological status of the child.

*Notes*

- Need to be structured and thorough
- If the secondary survey is incomplete (e.g. by the need for urgent surgical intervention) this needs to be documented and handed over in order that it is completed when the patient is stabilised

## CHAPTER 5

## AIRWAY AND VENTILATION

Maintenance of the airway is an essential core function in the critically ill child. Indications for intubation and the equipment and drugs needed are detailed in Tables 5.1 and 5.2.

*Endotracheal tube requirements*

- Internal diameter:  $(\text{Age}/4) + 4$  mm (over 1 year old)
- Need half a size smaller and larger available when undertaking intubation

**Table 5.1** Indications for intubation

---

Cardiac or respiratory arrest
Maintenance of airway
Patients requiring ventilation
• increasing oxygen requirements
• respiratory failure
• decreased level of consciousness
Potential airway obstruction, e.g. burn

---

**Table 5.2** Requirements for intubation

Equipment	Drugs
Suction	Oxygen
Laryngoscopes (two working ones)	Anaesthetic/sedation agents
Oral airways	Muscle relaxant
Face masks	Atropine
Ventilation circuit	
Endotracheal tubes	
Magill's forceps	
Intubation aids, e.g. bougies	
Stethoscope	
Tape	
Carbon dioxide measurement	

---

**Table 5.3** Endotracheal tubes for below 1 year of age

	internal diameter (mm)	oral length (cm)	nasal length (cm)
premature infant	2.5–3.0	5.5–7.0	7.0–9.0
newborn	3.0	8	10
6 months	3.5	10	12
1 year	3.5–4.0	11	14

---



- Length (Age/2) + 12 cm for oral  
(Age/2) + 15 cm for nasal
- Table 5.3 gives a guide to the size and length of endotracheal tubes in infants under 1 year of age
- As a rough estimate the same number of cm through the cords as the internal diameter in mm will lead to the endotracheal tube being in the correct place
- Remember to leave some extra for taping

#### *Confirmation of successful intubation*

- tube seen passing through vocal cords by direct vision
- confirmation that carbon dioxide is being expired
- auscultation may be misleading because sounds may be heard over the chest despite oesophageal intubation. Best to listen in both axillae and check over stomach.
- chest X-ray to check position – the tip should be around the level of the clavicles

#### *Complications of intubation*

- hypoxia
- failure
- misplacement (oesophageal intubation)
- trauma to lips, teeth, adenoids, soft tissues of oro or nasopharynx, larynx
- endobronchial intubation
- laryngospasm
- bradycardia/tachycardia
- sub-glottic oedema potentially leading to post-extubation stridor
- sub-glottic stenosis related to:
  - frequent reintubations
  - too tight an endotracheal tube
  - high pressure endotracheal tube cuffs

#### *Criteria for extubation*

- adequate oxygenation on  $\text{FiO}_2 < 0.4$
- adequate respiratory drive
- adequate recovery from neuro-muscular blockade and sedation
- intact cough and gag reflexes

#### *Immediate complications of extubation*

- Laryngospasm
- Pulmonary aspiration
- Bronchospasm
- Post-extubation stridor

### *Laryngospasm*

- prevention by adequate patient arousal and suction of pharyngeal secretions
- treatment: 5–10 cm H<sub>2</sub>O positive end expiratory pressure via bag and mask
- sedation, suxamethonium and reintubation if necessary

### *Post-extubation stridor*

- may develop over first few minutes after extubation
- prevention:
  - leak around endotracheal tube prior to extubation
  - few reintubations
  - pre-extubation steroids: Dexamethasone for 24 h
- treatment:
  - nebulised adrenaline  
0.5 ml/kg 1:1000 to a maximum of 5 ml  
1:1000 3 hourly or 1 ml 1:1000 half hourly
  - steroids
  - reintubation usually with smaller diameter endotracheal tube

## **Oral endotracheal tubes**

### *Advantages*

- easy to insert
- rapid control of airway

### *Disadvantages*

- patient discomfort – gagging
- obstruction by biting
- oral hygiene
- more difficult than nasal tubes to secure
- more movement in pharynx and larynx
- more sedation required and problems at extubation with oversedation when the stimulus of the tube is removed

## **Nasal endotracheal tubes**

### *Advantages*

- more comfortable, therefore less sedation required
- easier to fix
- less movement in nasopharynx and larynx
- can be used for a few weeks if necessary

### *Disadvantages*

- more difficult to insert, using Magill's forceps, it may be necessary to direct the tube down the trachea

- nasal erosions
- false passage creation
- damage to nasopharynx on insertion
- potential risk of sinusitis
- more difficult to suction than an oral tube
- may kink at entrance of nostril or posteriorly in nasopharynx

#### *Contra-indications*

- bleeding diathesis
- basal skull fracture potentially leading to the development of meningitis
- anatomical problems such as choanal stenosis or facial deformities

Unlike adults, nasal tubes are preferred to oral tubes for children in most circumstances.

### **Tracheostomy**

#### *Advantages*

- comfort
- less dead space
- easy suction for long-term use

#### *Disadvantages*

- surgical insertion in theatre required
- significant insertion complications, e.g. bleeding, false passage, hypoxia
- accidental removal may be life threatening
- other early complications include: subcutaneous emphysema, pneumothorax, thyroid injury
- sub-glottic stenosis more frequent the smaller the child
- other later complications: wound infection, tracheitis, aspiration, tracheal granulomas, secondary bleeding

#### *Ventilation*

- ventilation is a fundamental intervention in paediatric intensive care (Table 5.4)
- sometimes difficult to decide when to ventilate
  - hypoxia, e.g.  $\text{PaO}_2 < 8 \text{ kPa}$  on 60% oxygen
  - worsening hypercarbia or acidosis
  - deterioration in neurological status
- trends are better than absolute values
- when not to ventilate:
  - no likelihood of recovery
  - severe co-morbidity (ideally previously agreed with parents)

**Table 5.4** Indications for ventilation

---

Cardiac or respiratory arrest
Apnoea
Accompanying protection of the airway
Respiratory disease, e.g. pneumonia, bronchiolitis, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)
Cardiovascular disease, e.g. shock, pulmonary oedema
CNS impairment, e.g. encephalopathy, coma, status epilepticus
Neuro-muscular disease, e.g. Guillain-Barre
Trauma – head injury, lung or chest wall injury
Post-operative, e.g. cardiac surgery, co-morbidity, neonatal
Facial/upper airway burns

---

### **Physiological effects of intermittent positive pressure ventilation (IPPV)**

#### *Respiratory*

- may worsen V/Q mismatch by ventilating areas which are not perfused
- atelectasis occurs, reducing functional residual capacity (FRC) in the supine and anaesthetised child
- decreased pulmonary perfusion if cardiac output falls
- reduced surfactant production

#### *Cardiovascular*

- lung volume increases leading to:
  - increase in pulmonary vascular resistance
  - hyperinflation squeezes heart reducing cardiac output
  - release of factors causing reduced blood pressure
- raised intra-thoracic pressure:
  - reduces venous return due to increased right atrial pressure
  - direct effect on chambers of heart
  - reduces pressure gradient and therefore afterload for left ventricle

#### *Positive effects*

- improves alveolar expansion
- usually improves oxygenation
- allows easy removal of secretions
- allows adequate analgesia to be given to some patients, e.g. neonates, trauma

#### *Goals of ventilation*

The goal of ventilation is to maintain oxygenation. This is dependent on:

- inspired oxygen concentration
- mean airway pressure which is manipulated via tidal volume, positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP), I:E ratios

- re-expansion of atelectasis or collapsed lung segments, i.e. recruitment and keeping open of alveoli and the reduction of V/Q mismatch
- reduction in the work of breathing
- improve ventilation and avoid significant hypercapnia and acidosis
- avoid complications of ventilation

#### *Aims of ventilation*

- aim to ventilate for as short a time as possible
- ventilation is supportive not curative

#### *Ventilation strategy*

- depends on pathophysiology of illness
- aims to minimise lung damage
- lung damage depends on:
  - volutrauma
  - opening and closing of alveoli
- thus in general lower tidal volumes and application of PEEP reduce lung injury

#### *Volume controlled ventilation*

- developed from anaesthesia

#### *Advantages*

- maintains normo or hypocapnoea
- useful in conditions where this is important, e.g. raised intracranial pressure, head injury, encephalopathy, pulmonary hypertension

#### *Disadvantages*

- higher peak airway pressures
- potential of more barotrauma/volutrauma

### **Pressure controlled ventilation**

#### *Advantages*

- reduction in barotrauma/volutrauma
- less dead space ventilation
- reduced mortality in ARDS in adults

#### *Disadvantages*

- permissive hypercapnoea
- respiratory acidosis
- may lead to increased intra-cranial pressure
- increased sedation requirements

**Table 5.5** Indications for HFO

---

Infant respiratory distress syndrome (IRDS)
Premature neonates <1 kg
Air leak syndrome
Meconium aspiration
Diaphragmatic hernia
Persistent foetal circulation
ARDS
Recurrent pneumothorax

---

*Other strategies*

- 'best PEEP' optimise PEEP between 5 and 15 cm H<sub>2</sub>O to improve oxygenation. Usually increasing PEEP does not compromise the venous return too seriously.
- prone ventilation
- reducing lung water by use of diuretics (aminophylline is synergistic in combination with frusemide)

**High frequency oscillation (HFO) (Table 5.5)**

- distending pressure (mean airway pressure) recruits alveoli and improves oxygenation
- increasing the inspiratory time may help increase oxygenation but may also lead to overdistension and air trapping
- oscillation at 3–15 Hz enables carbon dioxide elimination depending on amplitude of oscillation. Frequencies of 10–12 Hz are used in neonates, 8–10 Hz in infants, 5–10 Hz in children.
- depends on square of tidal volume and frequency:  $V_t^2 \times f$
- therefore increasing the amplitude increases the tidal volume and decreases PaCO<sub>2</sub>
- inspiration and expiration are active
- high lung volume strategy, commencing with mean airway pressure above that on previous conventional ventilation

*Complications*

- raised intra-thoracic pressure
- disconnection for suction
- mucus plugging can occur
- less tolerant of hypovolaemia or myocardial dysfunction
- may have rapid changes in PaO<sub>2</sub> and PaCO<sub>2</sub> on changing on and off conventional ventilation
- air leaks (pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum) can occur

*Advantages*

- less acute and chronic lung damage than those ventilated conventionally

- animal studies show less inflammatory response
- less volutrauma
- improves oxygenation in those children who are failing conventional ventilation
- reduces atelectasis
- early use has been shown to improve respiratory morbidity in neonates

#### *Practical considerations*

- the ventilator tubing is relatively non-compliant making the connection to the endotracheal tube more difficult (Sensormedics)
- conventional suction involves disconnection leading to loss of mean airway pressure and therefore alveolar recruitment
- commence with a mean airway pressure 2–6 cm H<sub>2</sub>O above that on conventional ventilation and increase until oxygenation improves
- frequent chest X-rays (12 hourly for the first 24–48 h) are required to assess lung distension
- frequent arterial blood gases are required to assess CO<sub>2</sub> elimination

#### **High frequency jet ventilation**

- flow of gas jetted into proximal airway with/without conventional ventilation
- tracheal necrosis has been a complication
- seldom used

#### **Surfactant**

- deficiency in neonates leads to neonatal respiratory distress
- also deficient in ARDS and bronchiolitis
- use has had a major impact in neonatal intensive care in reducing the length of ventilation
- has been used in adult ARDS with no change in lung function or outcomes

#### **Inhaled nitric oxide (iNO)**

- nitric oxide is a potent vasodilator
- synthesised in body, acts on smooth muscle in the vasculature of circulation
- when inhaled, main effects are on pulmonary circulation thus should not cause systemic hypotension
- rapidly inactivated by binding to haemoglobin to form methaemoglobin

#### *Uses*

- decreases elevated pulmonary vascular resistance in patients with pulmonary hypertension – primary, secondary to cardiac/pulmonary disease or post-cardiac surgery

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- increases pulmonary blood flow through ventilated alveoli thus reducing ventilation-perfusion mismatch

### *Practical problems*

- inhaled delivery
- rapid conversion to toxic higher oxides of nitrogen depending on oxygen concentration, length of time in contact and the square of the iNO concentration
- need careful monitoring of nitrogen dioxide to patient, scavenging and environmental monitoring
- electrochemical monitoring best
- maximum nitrogen dioxide levels should be 2 ppm
- not all patients are responders
- therefore if no response iNO should be weaned and stopped
- evidence of improvement in oxygenation but not definite evidence of improved survival
- high doses usually not more effective
- doses 0.1–1.0 ppm have been shown to have an effect although 10–20 ppm are often used
- discontinuation can lead to a rebound reduction in  $\text{PaO}_2$  and therefore weaning can be difficult. This is possibly due to reduced endogenous production.
- some evidence that combining high frequency oscillation and iNO may be more effective
- one trial in adults demonstrated no difference in mortality but improved numbers alive and off ventilator at 28 days after 5 ppm iNO
- expensive

### *Side effects*

- methaemoglobinaemia (especially in neonates because of combining with foetal haemoglobin). Treatment is with methylene blue 1 mg/kg.
- may cause systemic vasodilatation and may have a negative inotropic effect causing hypotension
- 50–60% nitrogen dioxide is retained in lung and reacts with water to form nitric and nitrous acids
- inhibits platelet aggregation
- nitrogen dioxide causes tachypnoea, respiratory difficulty leading to non-specific oedema and chemical pneumonitis

### **Liquid ventilation**

- use of oxygen-carrying perfluoro-carbons
- reduce surface tension thus leading to recruited alveoli being kept open



- total liquid ventilation – tidal volume is essentially liquid. This needs dedicated ventilator and oxygenator.
- partial liquid ventilation – FRC filled with perfluoro-carbon. A conventional ventilator is used.
- some studies showing benefit in premature neonates

### **Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO)**

- external circuit allowing oxygenation and carbon dioxide removal
- there are two types:

#### **Venoarterial:**

- blood is taken from the right atrium and returned via the carotid artery
- permanent ligation of vessels used is often required
- bypasses pulmonary circulation allowing ‘lung rest’
- can assist systemic circulation
- risk of arterial embolisation

#### **Veno-venous:**

- requires higher extracorporeal flows
- elevates mixed venous  $PO_2$
- depends on patients’ own cardiac output
- reduced risk of embolisation

### *Indications*

- reversible lung pathology
- potential of good quality survival
- $>2\text{kg}$
- ventilated less than 1 week

### *Clinical*

- should be referred with an oxygenation index (OI) of 35–40

$$OI = \frac{FiO_2 \times \text{mean airway pressure} \times 100}{PaO_2 (\text{mmHg}) \text{ (or kPa} \times 7.5)}$$

- evidence of neonatal survival of 80%; paediatric around 50%
- used in meconium aspiration, persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, respiratory distress syndrome, severe sepsis
- complications:
  - 24% have neurological abnormalities on ultrasound/CT
  - haemorrhage including intra-cranial haemorrhage
  - chronic lung disease
  - renal failure

## Weaning from ventilation

### *Background principles*

- recovery from acute event
- stable cardiovascular system (may be on low dose inotropes however)
- normal electrolytes and haemoglobin concentration
- free from infection
- free from pain

### *Weaning criteria*

- normal  $\text{PaCO}_2$  (for that child)
- vital capacity 10–15 ml/kg
- tidal volume 4–5 ml/kg
- peak negative pressure  $>20$  cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
- spontaneous minute ventilation  $<10$  l/min
- $\text{PaO}_2 >8$  kPa on  $\text{FiO}_2 0.4$
- $\text{pH} >7.3$

### *Methods*

- To T piece – ideal after short term ventilation and rapid reduction of sedation, e.g. early post-operative period, head injury
- Synchronised intermittent mandatory ventilation:
  - reduce ventilator rate
  - in older children wean to continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)
  - in neonates down to 5 bpm
  - reduce pressure support
  - reduce CPAP

Advantages of slow weaning include:

- allows slow recovery from sedation and analgesia
- enables the respiratory muscles to recommence activity with support
- allows patient to improve slowly

### *Problems with weaning*

- disuse atrophy of respiratory muscles
- neurological weakness in PICU patient
- decrease ventilatory reserve, e.g. starvation
- ventilators may increase the work of breathing if not able to synchronise well with patient
- increased work of breathing due to poor compliance, e.g. bronchospasm, narrowed airway
- unrecognised illness, e.g. nosocomial pneumonia

- failure to clear secretions
- prolonged effects of sedative agents

### *Oxygen*

One of the main aims of artificial ventilation is the prevention of hypoxia. Yet oxygen is a toxic drug which within a few minutes of breathing 100% leads to:

- painful tracheitis
- slightly reduced ventilation
- constriction of blood vessels
- reduced surfactant
- small reduction in heart rate and cardiac output
- depressed red blood cell formation with prolonged exposure
- atelectasis because of removal of nitrogen splinting

In neonates high oxygen may lead to retinopathy of prematurity:

- hyperoxia in neonates leading to proliferation of blood vessels within the retina
- aim to keep  $\text{PaO}_2$  7–10 kPa; oxygen saturations 90–92%
- in general in children difficult to separate lung damage caused by high  $\text{FiO}_2$  and mechanical ventilation per se

### *Effects of ventilation on the lung*

- mechanical ventilation produces lung damage thought to be due to:
- volutrauma:
  - high-end inspiratory volume
  - repeated collapse and distension of alveoli and airways
  - in ARDS some lung units remain normal and these are likely to be damaged with high volume ventilation

Aim to:

- keep lung units open with PEEP
- avoid overdistension by limiting tidal volume and end expiratory pressure
- moderate permissive hypercapnoea
- need either to allow spontaneous respiration within the whole respiratory cycle or heavy sedation as it is uncomfortable to the patient or may lead the patient to fight the ventilator

### **Non-invasive ventilation**

Various types of non-invasive ventilation are available.

- CPAP – face/nasal mask/nasal prong  
CPAP driver
- Bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP) – face/nasal mask

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- External jacket ventilator providing constant pressure, oscillation or ventilation

### *Indications*

- Avoidance of intubation
- Respiratory disease, e.g. bronchiolitis, tracheomalacia
- Neuro-muscular disease, e.g. muscular dystrophy
- Oncological/haematological failure where intubation and ventilation often leads to a high mortality rate, e.g. respiratory disease in a child with leukaemia during treatment with chemotherapy

### *Advantages*

- Not intubated
- Avoids sedation
- Easily weaned
- Long-term survival in neuro-muscular disease is considerably improved

### *Disadvantages*

- Difficult to give high oxygen concentrations
- Physiotherapy and suction more difficult
- May lead to gastric dilatation
- Cannot be used if severe cardiovascular or respiratory disease
- May not be tolerated
- Full face mask may be less safe if the patient vomits

## CHAPTER 6

### CIRCULATION AND RHYTHM DISTURBANCES

After assessment and immediate treatment of the airway and breathing, the circulation needs assessment (Table 6.1).

The acute emergency is dealt with in the chapter on Resuscitation. The aim of this chapter is to follow up these problems.

*Shock (Table 6.2)*

Shock has three phases (Table 6.3).

**Table 6.1** Assessment of the cardiovascular system

- 
- Pulse – rate, rhythm, fullness
  - Capillary refill time or core-peripheral temperature difference
  - Blood pressure
  - Assessment of the effectiveness of circulation
    - Effect on other systems, e.g. conscious level, urine output
  - ECG
- 

**Table 6.2** Causes of shock

---

Hypovolaemic  
Distributive  
Cardiogenic  
Obstructive  
Septic  
Dissociative

---

**Table 6.3** Phases of circulatory shock

*Compensated*

- The body compensates for the cause of shock by maintaining essential body functions: blood pressure, urine output, cardiac function, neurological status
- The commonest signs are tachycardia, normal or near normal blood pressure, reduced capillary refill time, cooling of the peripheries, reduced and concentrated urine

*Uncompensated*

- Circulatory compensation fails
- Fall in systolic blood pressure, acidosis, oliguria, reduced level of consciousness occurs
- Anaerobic metabolism increases leading to metabolic acidosis

*Irreversible*

- These processes become irreversible and death ensues
-

Shock is the clinical state of circulatory inadequacy when there is the disruption of tissue perfusion leading to inadequate supplies of oxygen and nutrients to and removal of metabolites from the cells of an end organ. This leads to distributed function of these organs.

### **Hypovolaemic shock**

#### *Causes*

- Haemorrhage
- Fluid loss:           diarrhoea and vomiting  
                              heat stroke  
                              diabetes insipidus  
                              gastrointestinal obstruction
- Redistribution:   burns  
                              sepsis  
                              peritonitis

Care must be taken in trauma patients – as there can be considerable blood loss into the pleural or peritoneal cavities or from pelvic or lung bone fractures without obvious sites of bleeding.

Clinical presentation shows the effect of the body attempting to preserve fluid to maintain the intra-vascular volume.

- tachycardia
- decreased peripheral perfusion (increased capillary refill time)
- reduced urine output
- decreased cardiac output
- normal systolic blood pressure

### **Distributive shock**

#### *Causes*

- Anaphylaxis to drugs, blood, latex, foods, insects
- Neurological injury – head injury, spinal shock
- Septic shock

Changes in the vasomotor tone may lead to shock by pooling of blood leading to hypotension. Neurogenic shock from brain stem injury or high spinal cord transection may also lead to hypotension, due to reduced sympathetic tone.

#### *Cardiogenic*

Failure of the heart pump:

- congenital cardiac repair
- cardiomyopathy
- myocarditis
- post-cardio-respiratory arrest

- arrhythmia induced
- trauma
- sepsis

Signs may include those of heart failure including tachycardia, raised jugular venous pressure, gallop rhythm, lung crepitations, enlarged liver.

### *Obstructive*

This leads to obstruction of blood flow from the heart and shock. Causes include:

- Pulmonary embolism by thrombus, fat or air
- Cardiac lesions, e.g. aortic stenosis, coarctation or interrupted aortic arch
- Tension pneumothorax
- Cardiac tamponade

### *Septic shock*

Infection can cause overwhelming shock either as the primary cause or after release of bacteria from the GI tract has features of hypovolaemia, distributive and cardiogenic shock. The features show signs of infection and a generalised inflammatory response leading to multi-organ system failure (MOSF) (Table 6.4).

Meningococcal septicaemia (see Chapter 20) is the most florid example of this syndrome but it may occur with other infections.

### *Dissociative*

Here the cause is essentially the failure of the circulatory system to transport oxygen. Causes include:

- anaemia
- methaemoglobinaemia
- carbon monoxide poisoning

**Table 6.4** Signs and symptoms of septic shock

- 
- Tachycardia
  - Hyperdynamic circulation leading to poor peripheral perfusion
  - Tachypnoea
  - Oliguria
  - Lactic acidosis
  - Fever
  - Reduced cerebral function
  - Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
  - Hypoxaemia
  - Renal failure
-

*Inotropic and vasoactive substances*

Inotropes and other vasoactive substances are used to support the heart and circulation in times of inadequate or inappropriately distributed perfusion, i.e. shock.

- In any patient there may be multiple forms of shock occurring at any one time.
- Before starting any vasoactive substance, intra-vascular oxygenation and fluid status should be assessed and corrected.
- If more than 40 ml/kg of fluid, crystalloid or colloid is required then inotropes should be considered.

*General comments on inotropes*

- Correction of acidosis and low phosphate help the inotropic effects of these agents
- Need to be given by central venous access except for low concentration dobutamine
- Inotropes increase urine output by increasing cardiac output
- Dose requirement will vary and often more is required than the recommended doses as there is a large interpatient variation between infused dose and plasma concentration
- Important to give appropriate fluid to maintain normovolaemia
- Combination of inotropes may be useful, e.g. dobutamine and noradrenaline
- With time there is receptor desensitisation leading to tachyphylaxis. Steroids may reverse this process.

*Mechanism of action*

Most vasoactive drugs interact with adrenergic receptors with variable selectivity to produce inotropy, chronotropy or vasoconstriction (see Table 6.5). Other drugs cause inotropy by increasing cyclic AMP (milrinone) or intra-cellular calcium (digoxin).

**Table 6.5** Effect of inotropes on catecholamine receptors

	$\alpha 1$	$\alpha 2$	$\beta 1$	$\beta 2$	DA1	DA2
Epinephrine						
low dose	+	0	+	+	NA	NA
medium dose	++	+	++	+	NA	NA
high dose	+++	+++	+++	++	NA	NA
Norepinephrine	+++	+++	++	0	NA	NA
Dopamine	+---+	+	+---+	0---+	++	+
Dopexamine	0	0	+	++	+	+
Dobutamine	+	0	++	+	NA	NA



### *Catecholamines*

The catecholamine receptors have the following cardiovascular effects:

- $\alpha 1$  vasoconstriction
- $\alpha 2$  vasoconstriction
- $\beta 1$  increased contractility, increased chronotropy
- $\beta 2$  relaxation at smooth muscle – lungs, vessels – vasodilation, increased contractility
- DA1 renal vasodilation and natriuresis
- DA2 renal vasodilation and natriuresis

### *Formulae for drug delivery*

Epinephrine/norepinephrine:

$$0.3 \times \text{wt(kg)} \text{ in } 50 \text{ ml is equivalent to } 1 \text{ ml/h} = 0.1 \mu\text{g/kg/min}$$

Dobutamine/dopamine:

$$30 \times \text{wt(kg)} \text{ in } 50 \text{ ml is equivalent to } 1 \text{ ml/h} = 10 \mu\text{g/kg/min}$$

Peripheral dobutamine:

$$3 \times \text{wt(kg)} \text{ in } 50 \text{ ml is equivalent to } 1 \text{ ml/h} = 1 \mu\text{g/kg/min}$$

The choice of drug depends on the patients' current cardiovascular state. Invasive monitoring will be required to assess BP and filling pressures.

- Dobutamine is a good initial inotrope which can be given peripherally. It causes positive inotropy and chronotropy and some vasodilation. In general it improves cardiac output rather than blood pressure.
- In a high output state (e.g. sepsis) norepinephrine may improve organ perfusion by increasing afterload.
- Epinephrine is used for positive inotropy with some vasoconstriction.
- Both dobutamine and dopamine act partially by adrenaline release from neurones.
- In a failing heart (e.g. cardiomyopathy) inotropy with reduced afterload may be required – dobutamine, dopexamine or milrinone may all improve the cardiac status.
- Dopamine was thought to increase renal perfusion at low dose and provide both inotropy and vasoconstriction depending on the infused dose. However the effects are not predictable and dopamine may have detrimental effects on the immune system and worsen renal failure in higher doses.

*Phosphodiesterase inhibitors*

- Inhibit cycle AMP breakdown in the cell
- Aminophylline is a strong chronotrope, vasodilator and weak diuretic
- Enoximone and milrinone cause vasodilation and increase in cardiac output
- Use in shock with high systemic vascular resistance
- May be useful in heart failure
- More effective combined with  $\beta 1$  stimulation from catecholamines than alone
- Increase cardiac output without increasing myocardial oxygen consumption

**Other agents with inotropic effects***Digoxin*

- Inhibits the sodium pump ( $\text{Na}^+/\text{K}^+$  ATPase) leading to an increase in intra-cellular calcium
- Has negative chronotropic effects by increasing the refractory period of the action potential and also it reduces the conduction velocity of the AV node
- May be of use in atrial fibrillation

*Calcium*

- May be reduced post-bypass, in sepsis and following blood transfusions, possibly due to the citrate in blood products
- Infusions have vasoconstrictive and inotropic actions
- More effective in neonates than as the age of the patient rises
- Should be used if refractory hypotension with low ionised calcium
- Evidence that it may worsen the situation in sick cells

*Triiodothyronine (T3)*

- Essential for maturation of calcium channels in the sarcolemma and calcium ATPase in cells
- Reduced after cardio-pulmonary bypass, in sepsis and hypothermia
- T3 therapy reduced inotrope requirement in adults and improves myocardial function after cardiac surgery in infants and children
- T3 has effects on protein synthesis (slow) and effects on calcium ATPase activity to enhance diastolic relaxation of cardiac muscle and contractility
- Effectively acts as positive inotrope and vasodilator

## CHAPTER 7

### SEDATION AND ANALGESIA IN PICU

Sedation and analgesia are important for a variety of reasons within the PICU:

- to reduce distress
- to reduce the stress of critical illness (improve outcome)
- to reduce discomfort and pain
- to protect the child from injury and to allow medical care to be given
- to reduce parental stress of seeing their child distressed

#### *Assessment*

Many ways have been developed for scoring pain with faces, various colours, ladders, etc., but these rely on subjective assessment and sufficient watchfulness to be useful. Various scoring systems have been developed for assessing sedation of ventilated children. An example is the COMFORT score which looks at physiological variables:

- alertness
- heart rate
- respiratory response
- mean arterial blood pressure
- calmness/agitation
- physical movement
- muscle tone
- facial tension

There is some evidence that bispectral analysis may be useful in determining level of sedation and anaesthesia.

The assessment of adequacy of pain relief and sedation can be difficult. A number of factors need to be considered:

- nature of discomfort (e.g. ventilation)
- variations in physiological parameters (HR, BP, sweating)
- facial expressions/postures
- parental concerns

#### *Management*

There are several approaches to treating the anxiety and discomfort that may be experienced in ICU.

- psychological aids such as pre-warning/visiting PICU, explanations of what it is like
- parental presence and reassurance may reduce pharmacological requirements

- avoidance of psychological factors that may cause distress such as thirst and hunger
- regional nerve blocks to reduce pain and help to minimise the discomfort that can occur

A recent review of selective practice in the UK showed that the majority of paediatric intensive care units use a combination of opiate and benzodiazepine by infusion for sedation of critically ill children.

### *Complications*

- Oversedation leading to coma, bradycardia, hypotension, respiratory depression
- Ileus
- Contribution to critical illness neuropathy
- Undersedation leading to pain, fear, anxiety, fighting the ventilator, accidental extubation

### *Anaesthesia*

Induction of anaesthesia for intubation of the critically ill child can be fraught with problems. Most anaesthetic agents can cause hypotension particularly in hypovolaemic patients. There are two main techniques for induction: inhalational or intra-venous.

#### *Inhalational anaesthesia*

- This is used for patients with airway compromise where potential loss of the airway with neuro-muscular blockade or respiratory depression may lead to hypoxia
- Patients with epiglottitis, croup or other upper airway compromise should receive an inhalational induction
- Advantages include maintenance of the airway reflexes for a longer duration
- Care must be taken as children with partially obstructed airways take longer to become anaesthetised than normal children
- Disadvantages include the need for experienced personnel, may not be tolerated by the patient and hypotension through vasodilation and myocardial depression

#### *Intra-venous induction*

- This allows rapid and smooth induction in the emergency patient with early control of the airway
- Disadvantages include loss of airway reflexes, apnoea, hypotension due to vasodilation and myocardial depression
- Rapid sequence induction (RSI) needs to be performed if the child has risk of a full stomach. It has the advantage of rapid airway control.
- RSI needs a skilled assistant to perform cricoid pressure until the endotracheal tube is safely inserted

**Table 7.1** Intra-venous induction agents

Drug	Dose	Side effects examples
Thiopentone (25 mg/ml)	3–5 mg/kg	Hypotension, myocardial depression Accumulates with more than one dose Pain if extravasates Intra-arterial injection causes thrombosis Histamine release
Propofol (10 mg/ml)	2–4 mg/kg	Has caused epileptic effects Hypotension due to vasodilation Pain on injection (mix with lignocaine) Often have movements after induction Avoid infusions
Etomidate (2 mg/ml)	0.3 mg/kg	Cardiovascularly stable Abnormal movements after induction Pain on injection Seldom used
Ketamine (10 or 50 mg/ml)	1–2 mg/kg or IM 10 mg/kg	Causes dissociative anaesthesia for about 20 min Cardiovascularly stable Provides analgesia Does not depress respiratory or cardiovascular systems Increases intra-cranial pressure Causes hallucinations

- Preoxygenation for at least 3 min with 100% oxygen via a close fitting face mask needs to be undertaken
- Anaesthetic induction agent, e.g. thiopentone (see Table 7.1) is given followed by suxamethonium to facilitate rapid intubation
- Laryngoscopy and intubation is stressful and often tachycardia and hypertension may ensue. The use of a short acting opiate in addition such as alfentanil may ablate some of this response.
- The use of a straight bladed laryngoscope may cause stimulation of the vagal nerve from the back of the epiglottis leading to bradycardia. Suxamethonium can also cause bradycardia either with the second dose or with the first dose in neonates and young infants. Atropine should always be readily available.

#### *Sedatives and opiates*

- midazolam is the commonest benzodiazepine used in paediatric intensive care
- no analgesic effects
- sedative, anxiolytic, amnesic, anti-convulsant
- breakdown products have activity, e.g. midazolam (diazepam) lasts for 10–20 h

- midazolam has a very variable elimination half life in critically ill patients especially in neonates
- hepatic dysfunction may prolong action
- lorazepam slower onset and longer action and has no active metabolite
- side effects include a withdrawal syndrome with hallucinations and jitteriness. This occurs especially after high doses of more than 1–2 weeks duration.
- can use ‘drug holidays’ by rotating the drugs used
- reduction of benzodiazepine slowly with substitution of other drugs orally (e.g. chloral hydrate or clonidine) can help reduce withdrawal
- propofol has been implicated in a number of deaths in children following 3 or more days of use usually in patients with pyrexia from an upper respiratory tract infection. The recommendation is not to use it below the age of 16, although it was useful in patients who were to be ventilated for a short time after head injury.
- ketamine is fairly useful as an analgesic but needs to be given with benzodiazepines to prevent hallucinogenic side effects
- clonidine is another useful sedative either orally or by infusion. It is useful in morphine withdrawal but is limited by its need to be withdrawn slowly otherwise rebound hypertension can occur (Table 7.2 and 7.3).

### *Neuro-muscular blockade*

Indications for neuro-muscular blockade include:

- intubation and procedures
- as an aid to ventilation if the patient is fighting the ventilator or shivering
- to help control raised intra-cranial pressure
- in general it is better not to have patients paralysed as they are able to breathe, to move to reduce potential oedema and to allow assessment of sedation and analgesia thus avoiding possible awareness while paralysed
- patients who are paralysed for prolonged periods are more likely to develop critical illness neuropathy
- there are no real advantages to any of the non-depolarising muscle relaxants except that atracurium degrades depending on pH and temperature. This can be a problem in a warm PICU as the drug is affected by the environmental temperature, but is an advantage in patients with hepatic or renal failure (Table 7.4).

## **Regional anaesthetic techniques**

### *Epidurals*

- Epidural analgesia involves the placement of an indwelling catheter into the epidural space in order to give local anaesthetic, usually bupivacaine or ropivacaine, with or without opiate to aid analgesia

**Table 7.2** Sedatives used on PICU

Drug	Dose	Comments
Midazolam	2–6 µg/kg/min infusion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accumulates</li> <li>Care in hepatic dysfunction and in neonates</li> <li>Problems with withdrawal</li> <li>Long acting</li> </ul>
Lorazepam	0.1 mg/kg IV bolus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Long acting</li> </ul>
Chloral hydrate	25–50 mg/kg oral or rectal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Can accumulate</li> <li>Can cause hypotension</li> <li>May be prolonged in neonates</li> <li>Minimal respiratory depression</li> </ul>
Propofol	0.025–0.1 mg/kg/min IV infusion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Short acting</li> <li>Can cause hyperlipidaemia and has been implicated in some deaths. Not recommended for long-term infusion</li> </ul>
Ketamine	0.5–2 mg/kg/h IV infusion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Analgesic</li> <li>Releases endogenous catecholamines</li> <li>Contraindicated with elevated ICP</li> <li>Need to administer benzodiazepine to avoid hallucinogenic side effects</li> </ul>
Clonidine	0.4–1 µg/kg/h IV infusion or IV/po bolus up to 4 µg/kg/dose 6 hourly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Anti-hypertensive, care with first dose and build up</li> <li>Weaning must be slow otherwise rebound hypertension may occur</li> <li>Useful in morphine withdrawal</li> </ul>

**Table 7.3** Opiates used on PICU

Drug	Dose	Comments
Morphine	10–80 µg/kg/h bolus 0.1–0.2 mg/kg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>long duration</li> <li>half life increased in neonates</li> <li>easier to cross blood-brain barrier in neonates</li> </ul>
Fentanyl	1–3 µg/kg/h	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>longer duration than alfentanil</li> </ul>
Alfentanil	10–50 µg/kg/h	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>short duration of action</li> <li>good cardiovascular stability</li> </ul>

following surgery. Other indications include for flail chest where the analgesia provided may prevent invasive ventilation.

- the catheter has a number of centimetre marks to detect its position
- lumbar, thoracic or caudal epidurals can be performed
- usually centralised to area requiring analgesia
- regular measurement of the sensory block bilaterally is required to ensure that the block has not spread too far

**Table 7.4** Neuro-muscular agents used on PICU

Drug	Intubation dose (also hourly infusion rate)	Comments
Atracurium	0.6 mg/kg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>degrades depending on pH and temperature not dependent on renal or hepatic metabolism</li> <li>histamine release</li> <li>tachyphylaxis occurs</li> <li>few side effects</li> </ul>
Vecuronium or Rocuronium	0.1 mg/kg 0.5 mg/kg	
Pancuronium	0.1 mg/kg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>vagolytic causing tachycardia</li> </ul>
Suxamethonium	1–2 mg/kg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>depolarising agent for intubation</li> <li>can cause hyperkalaemia in burns or neuro-muscular disease</li> <li>raises ICP</li> <li>bradycardia particularly after 2nd dose</li> </ul>

**Table 7.5** Complications of epidural block

- Failure – in particular unilateral block. May need top up bolus or to pull the catheter back slightly as it may be to one side
- Hypotension due to sympathetic blockade. Fluids and ephedrine may be necessary
- Dural tap leading to post-dural headache which is classically positional (sitting up), occipital or nuchal in location. Treatment includes analgesics and fluids
- Respiratory depression due to epidural opiate. Naloxone IV will reverse the respiratory effects but not the spinal analgesia
- Horner's syndrome
- Total central neurological blockade where the anaesthetic is injected into the spinal fluid leading to unconsciousness and hypotension. Treatment is supportive
- Other rare complications such as abscess and haematoma can occur

- caudal epidural catheters may be used in neonates for analgesia. Often these are by bolus 8–12 hourly.
- side effect of opiates in epidural analgesia may include itching and urinary retention (Table 7.5)

### *Nerve blocks*

Various nerve blocks may be effective following trauma. Femoral nerve blocks are especially useful following fractures of the femur. Infusion through a catheter adjacent to the nerve can give long-term analgesia.



*Simple analgesics*

- These can be used as adjuncts for patients with post-operative pain, e.g. paracetamol, diclofenac, ibuprofen
- Improved analgesia occurs with regular use
- Remember potential side effects of NSAIDs with asthma and renal failure
- IV propacetamol (30 mg/kg qds) is a good alternative for patients who are nil by mouth and rectum

## CHAPTER 8

## FLUID, ELECTROLYTES AND NUTRITION

Fluid is required for:

- replacement of insensible losses
- continuation of essential urine output
- extra fluid for a modest state of diuresis
- replace abnormal losses

Normal maintenance requirements for children are dependent on weight. Requirements for neonates in the first week of life need to be reduced as they cannot excrete the fluid so easily. Fluid requirements increase on a daily basis to 150 ml/kg/day by about day 5 (Table 8.1).

#### Assessment

- major causes of fluid loss include gastroenteritis and diabetic keto-acidosis
- dehydration can be assessed by clinical signs and serum urea and electrolytes in combination (Table 8.2)

**Table 8.1** Daily fluid requirements

kg	ml/kg/h
<3	6
3–10	4
11–20	2
>20	1

**Table 8.2** Symptoms and signs of dehydration

Sign/symptoms	Mild <5%	Moderate 5–10%	Severe >10%	Notes/caveats
Decreased urine output	+	+	+	Beware watery diarrhoea making nappies appear 'wet'
Dry mouth	±	+	+	Mouth breathers are always dry
Decreased skin turgor	–	±	+	Beware thin skin, use several sites
Tachypnoea	–	±	+	Metabolic acidosis and pyrexia worsen this
Tachycardia	–	±	+	Hypovolaemia, pyrexia and irritability cause this

**Table 8.3** Causes of increased and decreased fluid requirements*Increased*

Raised temperature (fever)  
 Raised ambient temperature  
 Neonates  
 Radiant heater/phototherapy  
 Burns

*Decreased*

Humidified gases  
 Neuro-muscular paralysis  
 Hypothermia  
 Renal failure

**Table 8.4** Daily electrolyte requirements (mmol/kg/day)

kg	Na	K
0–10	2–4	1.5–2.5
11–20	1–2	0.5–1.5
>20	0.5–1	0.2–0.7

- part of a spectrum leading to hypovolaemic shock dependent to a certain extent on the speed of fluid loss
- hypovolaemic shock needs to be assessed and treated separately
- most of the body is water. 1 kg approximates 1000 ml.
- maintenance – fluid volume and sodium requirements dependent on weight
- deficit:

$$\% \text{ dehydration} \times \text{weight} \times 10 = \text{ml fluid required}$$

this is extra-cellular fluid – effectively 0.9% sodium chloride

- replacement fluid should be given over 24 h
- care with hypernatraemia (see below)
- 5% dehydration can be treated with oral electrolyte solutions. Greater than 5% requires IV fluids.
- Temperature increase/decrease by 1°C increases/decreases fluid requirements by about 7% (Table 8.3).

**Sodium**

Normal plasma level is: 133–144 mmol/l. Daily requirements are given in Table 8.4.

*Hypernatraemia (greater than 150 mmol/l)**Causes*

- vomiting/diarrhoea
- excess water loss, e.g. diabetes insipidus, osmotic diuretics, burns

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- high sodium intake
- iatrogenic fluid restriction (often combined with drugs containing sodium)
- near drowning (seawater)

*Presentation*

- lethargy, irritability, coma
- seizures
- may be incidental finding in critically ill children
- mortality up to 45% in acute hypernatraemia with brain damage likely in survivors

*Treatment*

- treat underlying cause
- slow rehydration using sodium containing fluid, e.g. 0.45% saline with dextrose (over at least 48 h). May need 0.9% saline.
- reduction of sodium level slowly 0.5–1 mmol/l/h
- this is important because of the possibility of cerebral oedema and worsening coma
- death or long-term cerebral damage may occur
- desmopressin (DDAVP) can be used in diabetes insipidus to reduce water loss

*Hyponatraemia**Causes*

- Inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (ADH) secretion – decreased water clearance
- Water overload, e.g. iatrogenic, nephrotic syndrome
- Excessive sodium loss (e.g. diuretics, renal tubular dysfunction, diarrhoea and vomiting)
- Fluid sequestration, e.g. sepsis, burns

*Symptoms*

- range from non-symptomatic through lethargy to coma
- nausea and vomiting
- seizures usually below 125 mmol/l

Signs and symptoms depend on degree of cerebral swelling.

*Therapy*

- prevention by routine fluid restriction
- fluid restriction as therapy
- if symptomatic, 3% NaCl to return plasma sodium to 125 mmol/l  
6 ml/kg of 3% saline increases body sodium by about 5 mmol/l. This fluid is irritant.

- frusemide will increase free water loss
- care to check for hypovolaemia
- in acute hyponatraemia, correction can be reasonably fast up to 125 mmol/l and then more slowly

### Potassium

Normal serum level is 3.5–5.5 mmol/l

- Potassium is an intra-cellular ion and therefore plasma levels do not reflect total body potassium
- Large intra-cellular buffer, therefore abnormal levels reflect considerable variation from normal levels except if significant cell wall breach has occurred

#### *Hypokalaemia*

- common causes: diarrhoea, alkalosis, diuretics, volume depletion, hyperaldosteronism, beta adrenergic agonists in asthma
- secondary hyperaldosteronism may lead to hypokalaemia due to sodium and water loss
- signs – ECG changes: T wave inversion, ST depression, predisposition to dysrhythmias, skeletal and smooth muscle excitability and weakness
- treatment: the cause, oral or IV replacement

Kidneys are good at preserving potassium.

#### *Hyperkalaemia*

- causes: renal failure, metabolic acidosis, adrenal insufficiency, cell lysis, high intake
- hyperkalaemia can be accompanied by hypovolaemia in sepsis

#### *Signs and symptoms*

- risk of arrhythmias particularly levels above 7.5 mmol/l – can proceed to cardiac arrest
- peaked T waves, decreased R waves, widened QRS complex
- muscle weakness

#### *Treatment (see figure 8.1)*

- care with hypoglycaemia
- calcium resonium may lead to constipation
- work by redistributing potassium into cells

### Calcium

Normal level 2.1–2.56 mmol/l

#### *Hypercalcaemia*

- rare
- causes: childhood malignancy, hyperparathyroidism

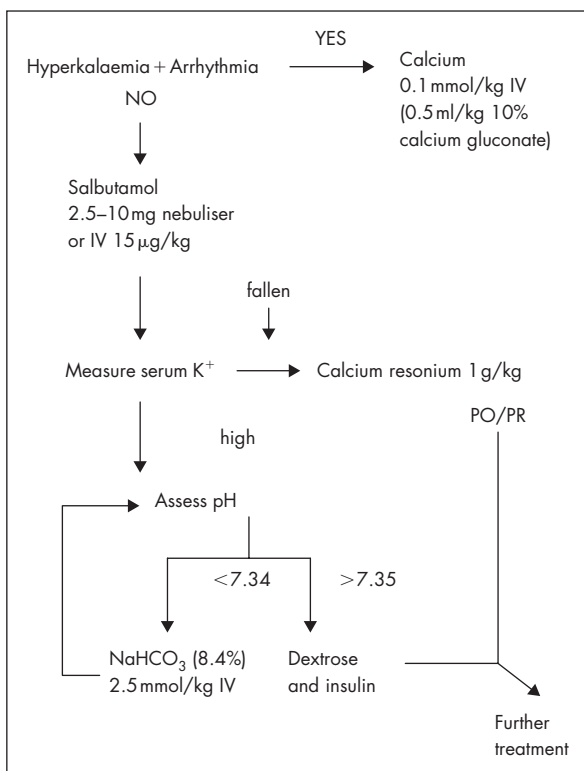


Figure 8.1 Treatment of hyperkalaemia

- iatrogenic administration
- effects: polyuria, kidney stone formation, hypertension, shortened QT interval and dysrhythmias
- treatment: hydration with or without diuretics, reduce calcium intake, phosphate infusion

### Hypocalcaemia

- causes: severe septicaemia, rickets, hypoparathyroidism, pancreatitis, rhabdomyolysis, citrate infusion (massive blood transfusion), acute and chronic renal failure
- treatment IV calcium
- may need infusion via central line
- high phosphate (especially in renal failure) may prevent rise

**Magnesium**

Normal level 0.64–1.09 mmol/l

*Hypermagnesaemia*

- very uncommon. Hypotension, coma, depressed reflexes.
- treatment: reduce intake, fluid, IV calcium

*Hypomagnesaemia*

- common up to 60–65% of adult ICU patients
- causes:
  - gastrointestinal: nasogastric losses, small bowel loss, malabsorption
  - renal: drugs including diuretics, intrinsic renal disease
  - post-transfusion
  - sepsis, burns

*Effects*

- ventricular dysrhythmias
- increase in PR and QT intervals, flat broad T waves on ECG
- neuro-muscular weakness
- may be associated with other electrolyte disturbances especially hypocalcaemia and hypokalaemia

*Treatment*

- IV bolus or infusion
- care with hypotension and dysrhythmias

**Phosphate**

Normal level 0.8–1.9 mmol/l

*Hyperphosphataemia*

Signs and symptoms:

- causes hypocalcaemia
- seizures and coma
- cause: excessive intake, reduced renal excretion due to reduced glomerular filtration rate, or increased renal threshold, cell lysis
- treatment: reduce intake, aluminium hydroxide antacids, restore plasma volume, insulin and glucose administration, dialysis, intra-venous calcium

*Hypophosphataemia*

- causes: reduced intake, increased loss, increased transfer into cells from extra-cellular fluid (ECF). Diabetic ketoacidosis and glycosuria, acidosis, renal tubular disorder, hypokalaemia.

- effects: reduced WBC phagocytosis,  
increased RBC production  
platelet destruction  
muscle weakness and peripheral neuropathy  
respiratory failure  
depressed myocardial function  
rhabdomyolysis  
CNS dysfunction/irritability up to seizures and coma  
liver failure
- treatment: prevention – TPN/enteral feed  
IV infusion except in hypercalcaemia, use low doses in hypocalcaemia  
risks include: hyperkalaemia, hypocalcaemia, hypomagnesaemia, hypotension, hyperosmolality, renal failure and calcium deposition

### Acid-base disorders

- maintenance of a normal pH is essential for the functions of cells to be undertaken
- pH is normally within the range of 7.35–7.45. This corresponds to a hydrogen ion concentration of 35–45 nmol/l
- initially ill children often demonstrate abnormalities of acid-base homeostasis

#### Physiology

- Normal pH is maintained by buffers in the body. These are solutions which contain a weak acid and its conjugate base and are relatively resistant to changes in pH.
- Two main categories are bicarbonate and non-bicarbonate
- The non-bicarbonate forms almost 50% of the buffering capacity of whole blood. These are haemoglobin, plasma proteins and organic and inorganic phosphates.
- However, the bicarbonate buffer system along with plasma proteins are able to form the immediate response to an increase in acid or base
- The bicarbonate buffer system is dependent on the equation:



- $\text{CO}_2$  (the acid component) is removed by the lungs and this mechanism can begin to act within minutes
- $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (the base component) is regulated by the kidney, by the retention of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  from the urine, greater production of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  and increased  $\text{H}^+$  excretion. This can act within hours.
- Full compensation by either mechanism is unusual



**Table 8.5** Classifications, effects and causes of acid-base disorders

*Respiratory acidosis*

- Characterised by raised  $\text{PaCO}_2$
- Hypoventilation due to
  - Respiratory depression
  - Obstructive and restrictive respiratory disease
  - Neuro-muscular weakness causing respiratory failure
  - Inadequate mechanical ventilation
- Increased  $\text{CO}_2$  production
  - Seizures
  - Malignant hyperpyrexia
- Chronic respiratory acidosis is associated with a partially compensated picture with raised  $\text{PaCO}_2$  and bicarbonate

*Respiratory alkalosis*

- Characterised by lowered  $\text{PaCO}_2$
- Hyperventilation
  - Salicylate poisoning
  - Fever, sepsis
  - Encephalopathy
  - Hypoxic and acidotic patients may hyperventilate
  - Overventilated by mechanical ventilation

*Metabolic acidosis*

- Characterised by a rise in serum  $\text{H}^+$
- Normal anion gap –  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  lost
  - From GI tract, e.g. diarrhoea, fistulae
  - From renal tract, e.g. proximal renal tubular acidosis, ureteral diversion surgery
- Increased anion gap acidosis
  - Renal failure
  - Ingestion, e.g. salicylates, methanol
  - Ketoacidosis, e.g. diabetic ketoacidosis
  - Lactic acidosis

*Metabolic alkalosis*

- Characterised by gain of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  or loss of  $\text{H}^+$
- Loss of  $\text{H}^+$ 
  - Vomiting, e.g. pyloric stenosis
  - Gastric losses from nasogastric tube
  - Renal losses, e.g. diuretic therapy
  - Increased mineralocorticoids
  - Post-hypercapnia
- Increased  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  – administration
- Large citrate load, e.g. massive blood transfusion

- Acute rises in  $[\text{H}^+]$  leads to an increase in intra-cellular cation leading to  $\text{K}^+$  leaving the cell causing hyperkalaemia
- The anion gap can be used to estimate negative ions not measured regularly (Normal is around 12 mmol/l):

$$\text{anion gap} = \text{plasma } \text{Na}^+ - (\text{plasma } \text{Cl} + \text{HCO}_3^-)$$

- Table 8.5 and 8.6 give the classification of acid-base disorders and the signs of metabolic acidosis

**Table 8.6** Signs of metabolic acidosis

- Stimulation of respiration
- May become deep and sighing (Kussmaul's respiration)
- Myocardial depression, reduced cardiac output
- Peripheral vasodilatation leading to hypotension
- Confusion and drowsiness
- Reduced activity of inotropic agents

**Table 8.7** Causes of lactic acidosis

Association with hypotension and/or severe tissue hypoxia

- Shock from any cause
- Respiratory failure
- Cyanide or carbon monoxide poisoning
- Severe anaemia

Associated with impaired mitochondrial respiration and increased lactate production

- Diabetes mellitus
- Hepatic failure
- Severe infection
- Drugs (e.g. salicylates)
- Toxins (e.g. ethanol)
- Inborn errors of metabolism

- Lactic acidosis is associated with an increase in pyruvate metabolism in muscle, skin and brain due to anaerobic respiration (Table 8.7).

## Treatment

### *Respiratory acidosis*

- Improve respiratory function by ventilatory support
- Need to be careful in patients with chronic respiratory acidosis

### *Respiratory alkalosis*

- Treat cause in order to reduce respiratory rate and depth
- Reduction of ventilation or increase in dead space may help if ventilated

### *Metabolic acidosis*

- Treatment of the cause
- Intra-venous fluids
- Sodium bicarbonate, but beware due to the left shift of the oxygen dissociation curve, inhibition of oxygen release from haemoglobin may occur
- Renal replacement therapy

### *Metabolic alkalosis*

- Treat cause if possible (e.g. stop diuretics)

**Table 8.8** Energy requirements

Age	kcal/kg/day
Premature neonate	150
Neonate	100–120
<10 kg	100
10–20 kg	1000 + 50 kcal/kg over 10 kg
>20 kg	1000 + 20 kcal/kg over 20 kg

- Saline responsive – those conditions with volume contraction of the extra-cellular fluid, e.g. via GI tract or kidneys
- Saline resistant (e.g. increased mineralocorticoid, hypercalcaemia) – treat the cause with adequate potassium and chloride replacement

## Nutrition

### *Nutritional requirements* (Table 8.8)

In critical illness nutrition may be poor due to:

- starvation due to illness and slow instigation of nutrition
- increased calorie use, e.g. from respiratory distress, pain
- effects of the critical illness: catabolism, pyrexia, stress

Poor nutrition may lead to:

- muscle atrophy and weakness
- decreased wound healing
- increased difficulty of weaning from ventilation
- reduced immune function
- atrophy of the gut mucosa

Assessment of malnutrition is difficult and no test (e.g. serum albumin) can easily diagnose this.

Aim is to help prevent the effects of poor nutrition particularly negative protein balance and try to maintain the immune response and wound healing.

### *Enteral nutrition*

- try to instigate as early as possible if not contraindicated
- requires functioning gut
- preserves gut mucosa, possibly reducing chance of stress ulceration, even in small amounts
- cheaper and fewer complications than TPN
- bolus feeds more physiological
- may need to consider prokinetics or transpyloric tube to instigate successful feed

*Complications*

- Vomiting
- Aspiration
- Bacterial infection
- Blockage of nasogastric tubes
- Constipation – poor water intake
- Diarrhoea – may be due to infection, lack of fibre

*Total parenteral nutrition*

- commence early if enteral feeding failed
- requires central access if glucose is in high concentration
- increased septic complications
- metabolic and electrolyte imbalance particularly hyperglycaemia
- lipid, amino acids and triglycerides need checking at least weekly
- trace elements need checking if deficiency suspected
- long-term TPN may lead to liver failure probably due to cholestasis

## CHAPTER 9

## TRANSPORT OF THE CRITICALLY ILL CHILD

Sick children often need transportation within or between hospitals. Evidence from North America and Australia, shows that concentration of paediatric intensive care services into large units is beneficial and that outcomes, particularly in moderately ill children, are improved. Therefore to provide a more centralised service, transport of sick children is required between district general hospitals and the local paediatric intensive care unit. Patients transported by a non-specialised team into a paediatric intensive care unit compared to patients admitted directly to that unit demonstrated an excess morbidity due to intensive care related adverse events such as blocked endotracheal tubes. Physiological deterioration was similar in both groups.

*Hazards of transfer*

In one study 75% of children transferred between hospitals had one or more adverse events, which were of a critical or serious nature. Patients who subsequently died were more likely to have had critical events during transfer. If the escorting personnel were inexperienced there was more likely to be a critical incident. Reduction in morbidity has been shown by specialist teams. In one study, 4% of the patients suffered physiological deterioration during transfer by a specialised team. In the USA, a comparison of the transfer of sick children by specialised and non-specialised teams showed a significant reduction in intensive care related adverse events with the specialised team from 20% to 2%. However, when physiological adverse events were compared there was no significant difference between the two teams 11% for the specialised, 12% for the non-specialised.

*Mode of transport*

This depends on factors such as patient location, geography, distance and weather. The majority of transports are by local ambulance. Problems in the ambulance include lack of space and access, noise, light, temperature, the effects of motion including acceleration and braking and safety for staff and the patient. Air transport has the additional problems of extra noise, vibration, access, altitude and staff familiarity with the aircraft. The alteration in partial pressure of gases and gas filled cavities are potential problems. The use of pressurised aircraft is better. Fixed wing aircraft are easier to work within and have less noise and vibration than helicopters but are limited by the need to use a landing strip. It is only advantageous to use air transport if the trip by ambulance is longer than 2 h.

*Staffing*

Each patient transfer requires:

- an experienced specialist in Paediatric Intensive Care
- an experienced Paediatric Intensive Care Nurse
- trainee (medical and/or nursing)
  - the service should be consultant led. It should be available on a 24 h basis.

A paediatric intensive care nurse is an essential part of the team. They should be a senior staff nurse or above, to have reasonable experience on their own unit, be a registered IV giver and to have had experience as an observer on transfers prior to being a member of the team. There should be a sufficient pool of nurses able to be rostered as the retrieval nurse on a 24 h basis.

*Equipment*

Table 9.1 and 9.2 lists the essential equipment required for interhospital transfer. Appropriate sizes for all children need to be available.

*Communication*

- Discussion with the parents is required before transfer. This should include the reasons for transfer, treatment prior to departure and location of and visiting arrangements for the paediatric intensive care unit (Table 9.3).

**Table 9.1** Essential equipment

- 
- Monitoring
    - ECG, non-invasive and invasive blood pressure
    - oxygen saturation, end-tidal carbon dioxide
    - temperature
  - Intubation equipment
    - masks and airways, endotracheal tubes
    - laryngoscopes, aids, e.g. Magill's forceps
  - Cannulation
    - cannulae, CVP lines, intra-osseous needles
    - giving sets, syringes, needles
    - arterial giving sets
  - Ventilator for both infants and children
  - Manual ventilation circuits
  - Suction
  - Defibrillator (in ambulance)
  - Stretcher – incubator
  - Telephone, documentation, batteries, etc.

A comprehensive selection of drugs required because of:

- wide variety of potential illnesses of patients
  - potential emergencies while in transit
  - variable location of patient and therefore accessibility to drugs in referring hospital
-

**Table 9.2** Essential drugs

Oxygen	
Cardiovascular	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• resuscitation drugs</li> <li>• inotropes</li> </ul>
Anaesthetic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sedatives, relaxants</li> </ul>
CNS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• anti-convulsants</li> <li>• antagonists, e.g. naloxone</li> <li>• mannitol</li> </ul>
Antibiotics	
Miscellaneous	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• steroids</li> <li>• diuretics</li> <li>• bronchodilators</li> <li>• local anaesthetic</li> <li>• saline, water, heparin</li> </ul>
Fluids	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• colloids, crystalloids</li> </ul>

**Table 9.3** Information required at initial contact by referring hospital

• Patient:	details, age, weight
• Illness:	diagnosis, identified problems, investigation results treatment undertaken appropriateness of referral
• Location:	hospital, ward, access medical staff contact, telephone number
• Advice:	bed availability PICU treatment your telephone number for further advice as required
• Contact should be at consultant to consultant level	
• Responsibility including initial resuscitation and stabilisation remains that of the referring hospital until the arrival of the transport team. However all advice given by the PICU should be recorded.	

- Transport of the parents, with their child, in the ambulance may be useful in the awake and anxious child but there are problems otherwise. This includes the lack of space, particularly if an emergency occurs; increased stress on both parents and staff and perhaps diversion of attention of the staff away from the child.

### *The ambulance journey*

- The environment of the ambulance is hostile for the critically ill child
- It is small, cold, noisy and often has poor lighting
- Movement causes a number of problems. In particular, difficulty in monitoring of the patient, mechanical and by the staff, may lead to potential delays in recognition of critical events.
- Any procedures are very difficult to undertake while in transit
- There is the potential of motion sickness in the staff

Thus it is important to stabilise the child prior to transfer, protect the airway and have two working intra-venous lines. Consideration has to be given to restraint of the child on the stretcher or in the incubator in event of an accident or sudden braking. If, however, a problem occurs during transfer, it is safer to stop the ambulance and sort out the problem while stationary.



## CHAPTER 10

## DEATH ON THE PICU

The death of a child is often the saddest event of their life for a parent. It is against the natural law of survival which we have come to expect in the UK.

Mortality on PICU is about 5–10%. Many of these deaths may have been predictable at the time of admission such as a child with a severe head injury, or out of hospital cardio-respiratory arrest. Some may not, e.g. post-operative cardiac arrhythmia, meningococcal sepsis.

In all cases, the ‘family’ needs to be seen as the unit of care. Involvement of the family at all stages of their child’s stay on PICU helps with the long-term outcome of bereavement. Regular communication with the medical staff and straightforward, consistent and unhurried explanations of what is happening to their child helps both parents. All the staff need to be aware of the different responses of the two sexes to their child’s illness and death and the problems that this can cause within the family unit. Cultural and religious differences also vary leading to differences in response to death and the requirements for burial.

### Withdrawal of intensive care

In 1997, the Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health published a document discussing the withdrawal of treatment. Five situations were recognised:

- The brain dead child
- Permanent vegetative state
- The no chance situation – treatment delays death without alleviation of suffering
- The no purpose situation – the degree of physical or mental impairment is unreasonable for the child to bear it
- The unbearable situation where with progress and irreversible disease further treatment is more than can be done

### *Practical cessation of treatment*

The end of life is hard even when expected. It is a difficult time for all concerned. Evidence shows that parents wish to be part of the decision and to be present even during resuscitation as this enables them to realise that everything was done for their child. Practical cessation of treatment includes:

- cardiac arrest
- brain stem death
- withdrawal of care with appropriate medication to prevent distress

*Brain stem death*

The Royal Colleges defined brain stem death as an indication that there is no longer any activity from the vital centres in the brain.

Two sets of tests of brain stem function are performed by doctors of more than 5 years post registration. The patient has officially died at the time of the first set of tests being negative. The second set are confirmatory only.

Prior to the tests certain criteria need to be fulfilled:

- a known cause for the coma
- the patient is normothermic
- normal biochemical and metabolic parameters
- no effects from sedation or neuro-muscular paralysis

The tests are:

- No pupil response to a bright light
- No corneal reflex
- No ocular response to caloric testing (ice cold water in the ear canal) (check that the ear drum is not perforated before testing)
- No gag reflex
- No cough reflex
- No evidence of cranial response to peripheral painful stimulus
- No respiratory effort to a raised carbon dioxide level (apnoea test)

*Post mortem examination*

There are certain circumstances in which a coroner's post mortem is essential, e.g. deaths associated with violence, post-operative within 24 h, accidents, poisoning. In other cases a hospital post mortem may help clarify the circumstances of death.

Following the Redfern Inquiry new consent forms for post mortem examination including information about retention of organs and tissue blocks have been introduced. Sensitivity with knowledge will help approach for permission. Cultural and religious differences exist towards post mortem examination. It is worth asking yourself if the examination would be useful.

*Donation of organs for transplant*

- Often raised by the family
- Permission should be sought sensitively
- Knowledge of the events and procedures following death can help allay doubts of the parents

*Following death*

- Be sensitive to religious practices
- Enable the family to have time with their child

- A follow up appointment about 6 weeks after death will help to answer questions and concerns of the family along with any results available from a post mortem

*Information*

- Resources for families and staff should be available
- A booklet allows relevant local information to be available
- A resource file will enable information to be available for staff

---

# Section 2

## Specific PICU Problems

---

## CHAPTER 11

### RESPIRATORY DISEASE

#### Respiratory

Respiratory illnesses that occur in children and necessitate intensive care can be divided into upper and lower respiratory obstruction and pneumonias. A further group may show inadequate respiration secondary to other diseases. These are discussed elsewhere.

#### Assessment of severity

##### *Respiratory rate*

- tachypnoea is the usual response to respiratory difficulty, but is also seen with metabolic acidosis and psychological disturbance (Table 11.1).

##### *Increased work of respiration*

- recession  
In younger children and infants the increased compliance of the chest wall makes recession a common sign. In older children (>7 years) it signifies severe respiratory problems. Both intercostal and sternal recession occur.
- use of accessory muscles  
Nasal flaring may indicate mild increase in work of breathing while sternomastoid, and other muscle use indicates markedly increased respiratory effort.
- grunting  
Grunting is due to decreased lower airway compliance. It is characteristically seen in infants and is a sign of severe respiratory difficulty. It may disappear in a fatigued child.

##### *Effectiveness of breathing*

The colour of a child's skin and mucus membranes give a subjective assessment of cyanosis. However the presence of anaemia, poor perfusion, hypercapnia or poor lighting complicate the assessment. Pulse oximetry should be used to give a more reproducible assessment.

**Table 11.1** Normal respiratory rates

Age	Breaths/minute
<1	30–40
1–5	20–30
5–12	15–20
>12	12–16

*Effect of respiration on other organs*

Cardiovascular system – hypoxia initially causes a tachycardia which leads to bradycardia as it becomes more severe and pre-terminal.

CNS – hypoxia initially causes agitation then drowsiness and eventually coma.

Oxygen administration, and ventilation are the mainstay of treatment. These are discussed in Chapter 5.

*Upper airway obstruction*

Table 11.2 gives the causes of acute upper airway obstruction most of which are infective in cause. History of trauma or inhalation of a foreign body may differentiate the others. Table 11.3 gives a list of the main causes of congenital upper airway obstruction. These are more frequently seen by ENT colleagues but a child with a history of previous episodes of croup may have an underlying predisposition and need ENT referral when they have recovered from the acute illness.

*Croup (laryngotracheobronchitis)*

Croup is an acute viral upper respiratory tract infection. It is characterised by a group of symptoms – inspiratory stridor, barking cough, hoarseness and a degree of respiratory distress that increases with severity (Table 11.4 and 11.5).

**Table 11.2** Acute causes of upper airway obstruction

---

Croup
Bacterial tracheitis
Epiglottitis
Diphtheria
Acute tonsillitis
Infectious mononucleosis
Retropharyngeal abscess
Trauma
Foreign body

---

**Table 11.3** ‘Congenital’ and non-acute causes of upper airway obstruction

---

Choanal atresia or stenosis
Laryngomalacia
Laryngeal webs, stenosis, cleft, cyst
Tracheomalacia (often associated with tracheo-oesophageal atresia)
Vascular ring
Bronchomalacia
Sub-glottic stenosis (acquired from previous intubations)
Laryngeal papillomata
Intra-thoracic tumours

---



**Table 11.4** Clinical features of croup, bacterial tracheitis and epiglottitis

	Croup	Bacterial tracheitis	Epiglottitis
Commonest age	3 months–3 years	any age	2–7 years
Onset	gradual	gradual	rapid (hours)
Temperature	low or normal	usually high	high
Cough	barking/stridor	barking/stridor	muffled/none
Sore throat	no	no	yes
Posture	any	any	sitting forward
Drooling	no	no	yes
Voice	normal	normal	muffled
General appearance	non-toxic	toxic	toxic, anxious
Respiratory rate	rapid	normal	normal – early

**Table 11.5** Common infective causes of croup

- Parainfluenzae virus
- Respiratory syncytial virus
- Adenovirus

**Table 11.6** Clinical croup score

Parameter	0	1	2
Inspired breath sound	Normal	Harsh, rhonchi	Delayed
Stridor	None	Inspiratory	Inspiratory + expiratory
Cough	None	Hoarse cry	Bark
Retractions, flaring	None	Flaring and suprasternal retraction	Flaring, suprasternal + intercostal retraction
Cyanosis	None	In air	In 40% O <sub>2</sub>

mild – score <2; moderate – score 2–4; severe – score ≥5.

- As the disease worsens the stridor becomes both inspiratory and expiratory and present at rest. Signs of respiratory distress become more marked and hypoxaemia can occur.
- A chest X-ray may show sub-glottic narrowing, distention of hypopharynx and tapering of trachea (Steeple sign).
- The differential diagnosis is with epiglottitis, which usually has a more rapid onset, the child is more toxic, usually sitting and older.
- The severity of croup can be assessed using a croup score but this should not replace clinical judgement. The trend is more important than the actual score (Table 11.6).

#### Treatment

- Initially supportive in a calm atmosphere with gentle handling.
- Humidified O<sub>2</sub> with saturation monitoring should be provided – keep SaO<sub>2</sub> >90%.

- Adrenaline can be given via a nebuliser (0.5 ml/kg of 1:1000 adrenaline to a maximum of 5 ml). Can be repeated 3 hourly. This will give temporary relief for up to 2 h. Indications include deterioration, pre-intubation (facilitates inhalational anaesthesia), and prior to transport.
- Steroids – reduce the need for intubation in viral croup and reduce the duration of ventilation. A loading dose of 0.6 mg/kg of dexamethasone (max 10 mg) then 0.15 mg/kg 6 hourly. The steroids can be given orally, IM, IV or nebulised depending on the severity of the croup.
- Antibiotics – only for bacterial croup.
- Helium – Helium is a low density inert gas. When substituted for nitrogen in the inspired gas flow, the force required to move gas through the airways is decreased. Helium-oxygen mixtures have been shown to improve symptoms refractory to nebulised adrenaline temporarily.

### *Epiglottitis*

- Epiglottitis is a severe life threatening infection of the epiglottis and surrounding tissues.
- While epiglottitis occurs most commonly between 2 and 7 years of age it can occur in adults and infants. The causative organism is most commonly *Haemophilus influenzae* type B. This causes a supraglottic obstruction with a rapid (3–6 h) onset with a toxic looking child. Usually the child will be sitting up, drooling with a muffled or guttural respiratory noise. The child may be reluctant to speak or swallow and be pyrexial ( $>39^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).
- The diagnosis is made from the history and clinical signs. It is important to keep the child as calm as possible as airway obstruction can be precipitated by distress, e.g. IV insertion.

### *Management*

- As the airway is in immediate danger, senior help should be sought rapidly. Consultants in anaesthesia/ICU and ENT surgeon will be needed as intubation can be very difficult.
- The child should be nursed where they are most comfortable and transferred to the operating theatre for intubation. Following a gaseous induction, intubation should be attempted, if unsuccessful a needle cricothyroidotomy followed by a tracheostomy should be performed to secure the airway. Often the most difficult time of induction of anaesthesia is during moving the child from the upright position on his or her mother's knee to the lying down position for intubation, as the epiglottis can fall back and obstruct the laryngeal inlet. Maintaining continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) may help. Induction of anaesthesia takes longer than expected due to the narrow airway. Laryngoscopy should demonstrate a cherry red oedematous epiglottis which may prevent visualisation of the vocal cords and trachea.

- After securing the airway IV access should be obtained and blood cultures, U + E and FBC and glucose samples sent for analysis. Throat swabs should also be sent.
- Cefotaxime (150 mg/kg/day) or chloramphenicol (50 mg/kg/day) should be started intra-venously.
- Usually the child can be extubated after 24–36 h and will have fully recovered within 5 days.
- An algorithm for the management of acute epiglottitis is shown in Figure 11.1.

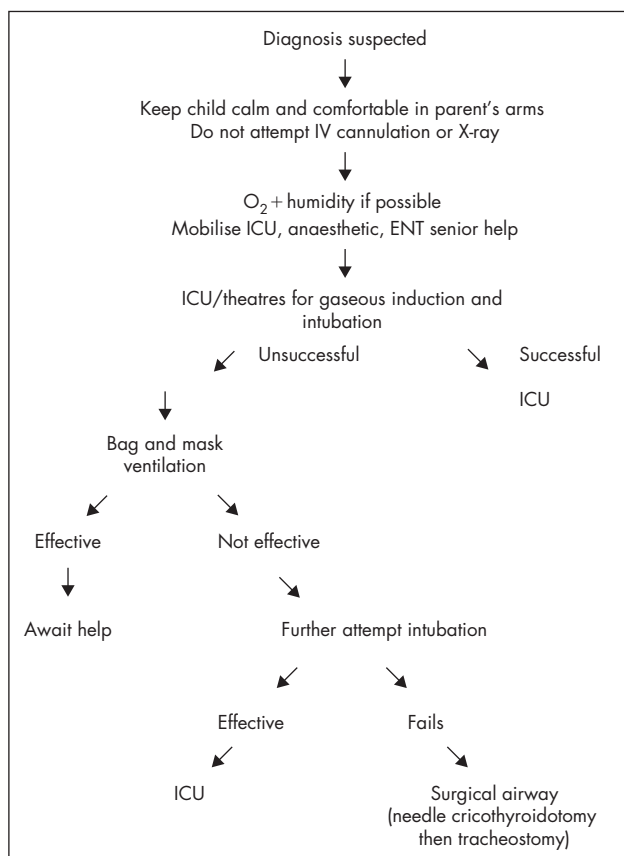


Figure 11.1 Algorithm for the management of acute epiglottitis

## Lower airway illnesses

### Asthma

Asthma still kills in the UK.

#### *Incidence*

The incidence of asthma is increasing, and hence the admissions to intensive care with life threatening asthma is also likely to increase. Boys have a higher incidence of asthma than girls.

#### *Pathophysiology*

Asthma is a disease in which air becomes trapped due to inflammation of the lower airways. It follows that expiration cannot occur fully and respiratory distress can ensue. In the toddler the process can be rapid despite optimal treatment.

Asthma in children is usually associated with a specific allergy (e.g. house dust mite or pets) and is a disease of exacerbations with variable symptoms between exacerbations. Many exacerbations have no identifiable precipitating factor but some may be associated with allergen exposure, infections, exercise, emotional state, environmental pollution and weather systems.

The pathological process consists of thickening of the basement membrane, eosinophilic infiltration, hypertrophy of the mucous glands and submucosal smooth muscle but with normal alveoli and remains despite the child being asymptomatic.

#### *Differential diagnosis*

- Acute infections: croup, epiglottitis, bronchiolitis and bronchopneumonia
- Aspiration of foreign body
- Congenital malformations: laryngotracheomalacia, anomalous subclavian artery syndrome (vascular ring), vocal cord paralysis and tracheal or bronchial stenosis

#### *Assessment of severity*

In assessing the severity of an acute exacerbation of asthma it is important to note the acute history including duration of symptoms, what treatment has already been given and to what effect. The course of previous exacerbations including any admissions to hospital, HDU or ICU should also be ascertained.

On examination respiratory rate and wheeze can be poor indicators of severity. The ability to speak, the use of accessory muscles and the presence of pulsus paradoxus (difference between systolic pressures in inspiration and expiration) greater than 20 mmHg are better indicators.

**Table 11.7** Features of severe asthma

- 
- Unable to feed or talk
  - Use of accessory respiratory muscles and obvious recession
  - High respiratory rate (typically >50 breaths per minute)
  - High pulse rate (typically >140 bpm)
  - Peak expired flow rate (PEFR) <50% of expected
- 

**Table 11.8** Features of life threatening asthma

- 
- Reduced conscious level/agitation
  - Features of exhaustion
  - Silent chest/poor respiratory effort
  - Reduced SaO<sub>2</sub> in air
- 

The accurate use of peak expiratory flow meters will depend upon the age of the patient and the severity of the disease.

Arterial hypoxaemia and reduced SaO<sub>2</sub> on air are indicators of severe or life threatening asthma (Table 11.7 and 11.8).

#### *Initial management*

- Provide high concentration oxygen via a mask with a reservoir bag
- Commence nebulised  $\beta_2$  agonists such as salbutamol (hourly or continuously if needed) and corticosteroids orally unless vomiting
- If the asthma does not respond to these measures then add in nebulised ipratropium 6 hourly
- Intra-venous aminophylline or salbutamol may need to be used in severe cases. An IV bolus of 15  $\mu\text{g/kg}$  of salbutamol may aid the nebulised salbutamol to reach underventilated areas of the lung.
- Intra-venous aminophylline bolus, followed by infusion may be useful if the nebulisers are not fully effective
- Steroids act by increasing the number of  $\beta$  receptors and by reversing the down-regulation of the existing receptors
- This process takes a minimum of 4–6 h to occur
- Volatile anaesthetic agents halothane and isoflurane are potent bronchodilators
- Use of magnesium sulphate by loading dose 60–70  $\mu\text{g/kg}$  followed by an infusion 20–40  $\mu\text{g/kg/h}$  has been shown to be useful. Care with hypotension. Magnesium levels need monitoring.

If the child still has signs of life threatening asthma (see table above) then intubation and ventilation may be considered.

#### *Criteria for intubation*

The aim of treatment is to try and avoid ventilation because of the difficulty of ventilating these patients and the risks of air leaks.

The criteria for intubation and ventilation are mainly clinical:

- Respiratory arrest
  - Signs of respiratory exhaustion
  - Reduced breath sounds or a 'quiet' chest
  - Reduced mental status – lethargy, agitation, coma, convulsions
- Arterial blood gases can be helpful in assessing response to treatment and the onset of exhaustion. Usually the  $\text{PaCO}_2$  will be below normal but a rising  $\text{PaCO}_2$  may indicate deterioration. Persistent hypoxaemia and cyanosis refractory to oxygen therapy are poor prognostic indicators.
- Intubation should be by a rapid sequence induction following pre-oxygenation.
  - Ketamine has been used as it is a bronchodilator and may help reduce the fall in blood pressure that is often seen during induction.
  - The hypotension is due to a combination of high intra-thoracic pressures reducing venous return and a relative hypovolaemia. Treatment is with a rapid fluid bolus.
  - Continued neuro-muscular relaxation may be necessary to reduce airway pressures during ventilation and to avoid ineffective effort by the patient.

### *Ventilation*

Aims are:

- Lowest peak airway pressure possible, low tidal volumes, long expiratory time, low respiratory rate
- Acceptable gas exchange –  $\text{PaO}_2 > 9 \text{ kPa}$ , permissive hypercapnia
- Minimal intrinsic positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP) (the positive airway pressure due to air trapping in distal airways)

Although no one mode of ventilation has been shown to be better, pressure control ventilation provides some protection against barotrauma. It should be noted that as compliance will change tidal volumes will not be constant.

### *Complications of ventilation*

- Pneumothoraces and other air leaks
- Hypoxia

### **Bronchiolitis**

Bronchiolitis is an acute infectious, inflammatory disease of both upper and lower airways. It is the commonest, serious respiratory infection in childhood. 2–3% of all infants are admitted to hospital each year. About 80% of admissions for bronchiolitis are in the first year of life, and 50% are in the second, third and fourth months of life. Admissions prior to this are rare, presumably due to trans-placental transfer of maternal IgA giving protection.

Serious infections may be mediated by IgE antibodies which cause a Type 1 allergic reaction as part of a complex immune mechanism.

### *Aetiology*

Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) is isolated in approximately 75% of children, from naso-pharyngeal aspirate. Other pathogens implicated include the parainfluenzae virus types 1, 2 and 3, influenza virus, adenovirus 1, 2 and 5 and mycoplasma. Boys are more commonly affected and more often hospitalised. Prematurity, low birth weight, lower socio-economic status, parental smoking, absence of breast feeding increase the incidence of bronchiolitis while pre-existing chronic lung disease and congenital heart disease increase the risk of respiratory failure. Bronchiolitis is very contagious with viral shedding occurring up to 21 days following the onset of symptoms.

### *Symptoms and signs*

- Fever and a clear nasal discharge precede a dry cough and breathlessness. Wheezing is common and feeding difficulties usually cause hospitalisation. The patient is usually tachypnoeic with respiratory recession.
- On auscultation wheeze and inspiratory crackles may be heard.
- The respiratory pattern may be irregular and there may be recurrent apnoeas. Apnoeas occur in about 20% of hospitalised patients and are more common in premature infants born at less than 32 weeks gestation.
- The apnoeas require intubation and ventilation in about 10% of these patients.
- A tachycardia of 140–200 beats/min occurs and the infant may appear pale or cyanosed.
- The degree of hypoxia is the best indicator of severe illness and often corresponds to the tachypnoea.
- The chest X-ray shows a hyperinflated chest with flattened diaphragms and air trapping.
- There may be lobar infiltrates and/or atelectasis in up to 20% of patients, particularly in the upper lobes.

Respiratory syncytial virus can be identified by direct immunofluorescent antibody staining or an enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) from a naso-pharyngeal aspirate (NPA).

### *Clinical course*

The majority of children will recover from the acute illness within 2 weeks, but coughing may persist for several weeks. 1–2% of patients will require intubation and ventilation, usually because of recurrent apnoeas, exhaustion and/or respiratory failure.

Between 20 and 50% of children develop a recurrent wheeze and cough over the next 3–5 years. Rarely there is severe permanent damage to the airways, bronchiolitis obliterans.

### *Management*

- The main treatment for bronchiolitis is oxygen therapy and fluid replacement.
- Monitoring should include pulse oximetry, fluid intake and output, apnoea alarm and temperature especially in the small infant.
- Oxygen should be humidified and can be delivered into a headbox, via nasal CPAP or by mechanical ventilation.
- The inspired oxygen concentration should be sufficient to ensure a saturation of >93%.
- There is no convincing evidence to recommend the use of bronchodilators, corticosteroids or antibiotics. The wheeze is due to secretions not smooth muscle constriction.
- Nebulised and subcutaneous adrenaline have been shown to improve oxygenation and clinical signs compared with placebo.
- Ribavirin is an anti-viral agent which, when given by nebulisation, may help prevent ventilation in this group of patients. However, it is difficult to administer and has no evidence of effectiveness. It is used in high risk patients such as those with chronic lung or congenital cardiac disease in which mechanical ventilation is preferably avoided – it is not useful once ventilated.
- Mechanical ventilation should be at a rate slow enough to allow adequate emptying of the airways. The ventilator inspiratory time needs to be long enough to overcome the resistance to airway opening. High inspiratory pressures may be needed to help oxygenation. In infants with progressive hypoxaemia refractory to conventional treatments, high frequency oscillation or extracorporeal membrane oxygenation should be considered.
- Those patients who are admitted to ICU often have different clinical courses:
  - infants who have apnoeas as their main presenting feature who require nasal CPAP or intermittent positive pressure ventilation (IPPV) for a few days
  - those who have pneumonia often with an up and down course with collapsed lung lobes on chest X-ray often with different lobes affected during the illness
  - those with a more severe pneumonitis who may need ventilation for 10–14 days

### *Pneumonia*

Pneumonia in childhood may be caused by many pathogens, both bacterial and viral. The precipitating cause varies with age group (see Table 11.9).



**Table 11.9** Infectious causes of pneumonia

Age	Causative organisms
Perinatal (<4 weeks)	<i>E. coli</i> and other gram -ve organisms Group B haemolytic streptococci <i>Chlamydia trachomatis</i>
Infancy	RSV Pneumococcus <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>

*Diagnosis*

In younger children and infants non-specific symptoms may predominate such as fever, vomiting and obtundation. Cough and breathlessness with or without purulent sputum often occur. Pleuritic inflammation may result in chest, abdominal and/or neck pain. The classical signs of consolidation may be absent and may only be identified on X-ray.

Pleural effusions are reasonably common especially with bacterial pneumonia.

*Treatment*

Supportive for most non-bacterial pneumonia

- Chlamydia and mycoplasma should be treated with erythromycin 40–50 mg/kg/day usually orally.
- If pneumocystis carinii pneumonia is suspected co-trimoxazole 18–27 mg/kg/day IV should be prescribed.

*Bacterial*

- <1 month Ampicillin 75–100 mg/kg/day and Gentamicin 5 mg/kg od
- 1–3 months Cefuroxime (75–150 mg/kg/day) or co-amoxiclav (40 mg/kg/day)
- >3 months Benzylpenicillin or erythromycin (change to cefuroxime or amoxycillin if no response)

This should be amended depending on local patterns of infection.

The general principles of treatment are similar to other ill children, i.e. hydration, anti-pyretics and ventilatory support if necessary.

*Whooping cough*

- Caused by *Bordetella pertussis*
- Diagnosed by characteristic ‘whooping’ cough
- Commonly develop secondary bacterial pneumonia
- Routinely vaccinated but herd immunity reducing due to reduced level of vaccine uptake

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- Diagnosed by per-nasal swab
- Often have very high white cell count  $>20$  mainly lymphocytes
- Treatment is supportive
- Humidified oxygen
- Chlorpromazine may reduce cough
- Ventilation as required
- Erythromycin reduces the length of infectivity but not illness

## CHAPTER 12

### CARDIAC DISEASE ON THE PICU

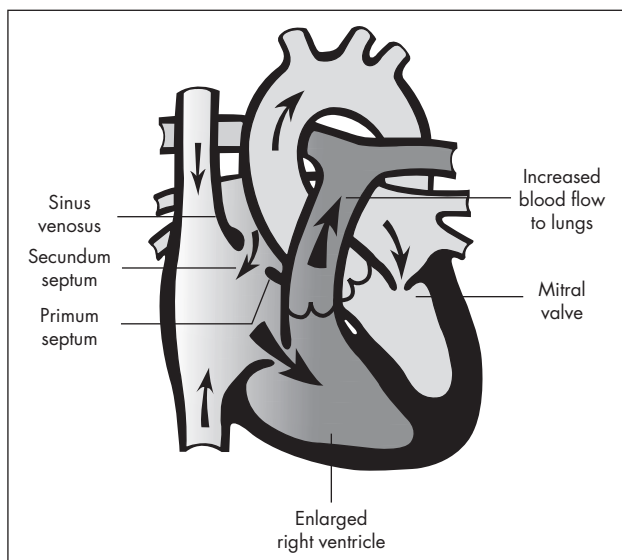
#### **Congenital heart disease (CHD) – general points**

- Incidence is 6–8/1000 live births
- More common in premature infants
- Causes are multifactorial and include known teratogens (diabetes, rubella, maternal alcohol) and associations with chromosomal abnormality (e.g. trisomy 21) or other recognised patterns of malformation or syndrome
- May be associated with a significant musculoskeletal defect (e.g. diaphragmatic hernia, exomphalos, tracheo-oesophageal fistula, imperforate anus)

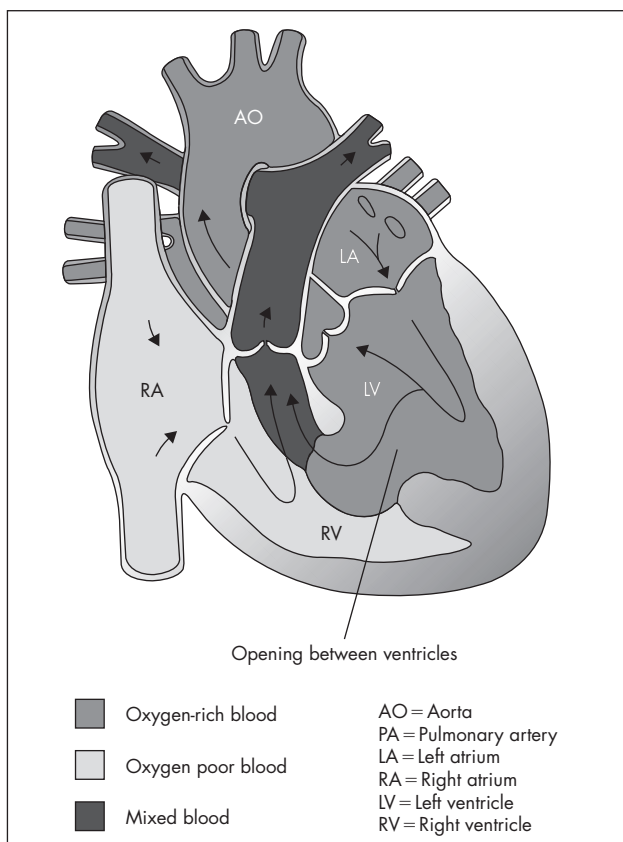
#### **Simple pathophysiological classification of congenital heart disease**

##### *Lesions causing primary left-right shunts*

- Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA)
- Atrial septal defect (ASD) (Figure 12.1)



**Figure 12.1** Atrial septal defect (secundum)



**Figure 12.2** Ventricular septal defect (VSD)

- Ventricular septal defect (VSD) (Figure 12.2)
- Aorto pulmonary (AP) window
- Atrioventricular septal (AVSD) defect
- Systemic arterio-venous (AV) malformation

*Lesions causing primary right-left shunts*

The following lesions present with increased pulmonary vascular markings on chest X-ray

- Transposition of the great arteries (TGA),  $\pm$  VSD
- Truncus arteriosus
- Total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage (TAPVD)

The following lesions present with reduced pulmonary vascular markings

- Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF)
- Pulmonary atresia  $\pm$  VSD
- Tricuspid atresia  $\pm$  VSD
- Critical pulmonary stenosis

### **Lesions obstructing ventricular function**

These lesions may present with cardiac failure or cardiogenic shock.

#### *Left heart*

- Coarctation of the aorta
- Interruption of the aorta
- Critical aortic stenosis
- Mitral stenosis
- Hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS)

#### *Right heart*

- Pulmonary stenosis

### **Shunts**

- A shunt is a communication between systemic and pulmonary circulations and may occur:
  - outside the heart (e.g. collateral vessels, patent ductus arteriosus)
  - within the heart (at atrial, ventricular or great artery level)
- It may be a component of the congenital heart lesion or created to palliate it (e.g. a Blalock Taussig shunt).
- The magnitude and direction of blood flow across a shunt are determined by the size of the communication and by the relative resistances of the pulmonary and systemic vascular resistances.
- Shunting may be essential for survival (a patent ductus may supply the pulmonary blood in pulmonary atresia or the systemic flow in aortic atresia). Where there is complete or partial obstruction to a circulatory path, a communication at another level is essential.

#### *Left to right shunts, general points*

- Children are typically pink with increased pulmonary vascular markings on chest X-ray.
- Physical signs reflect the shunt volume (tachypnoea, reduced pulmonary compliance).
- Heart chambers enlarge and hypertrophy to cope with increased volume.
- Increased flow across a valve causes a murmur.
- Volume overload can ultimately cause ventricular failure.
- Sustained high pulmonary blood flow damages small peripheral pulmonary arteries.

- This can cause pulmonary hypertension, which may become irreversible (Eisenmenger's syndrome, in which flow through the shunt becomes R-L and the patient cyanosed).
- Initial management includes oxygen administration and diuretics (furosemide, amiloride).
- Intermittent positive pressure ventilation (IPPV) may be necessary to reduce the work of breathing and oxygen consumption, reduce ventricular preload, and prevent fatigue. Inotropes may be required.

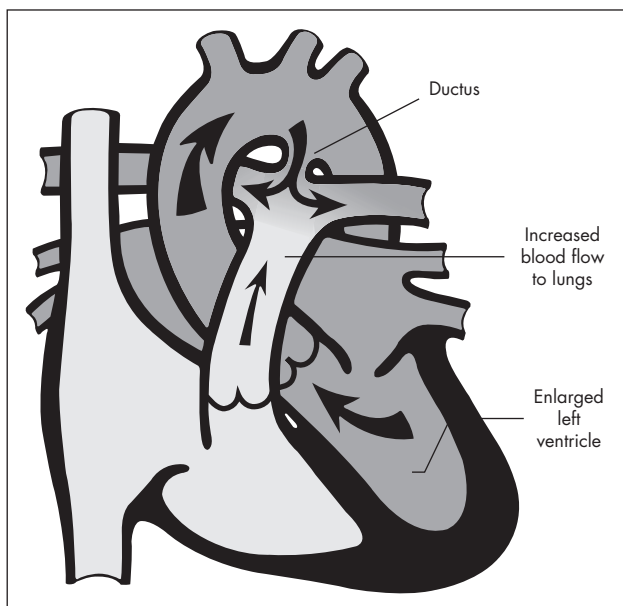
#### *Right to left shunts and cyanosis*

- Pulmonary blood flow is maintained through a patent ductus arteriosus in 'duct-dependent' lesions.
- Prostaglandin infusion (2–20 ng/kg/min via a peripheral vein) is required to maintain the patency of the ductus.
- Side effects of prostaglandin infusion include apnoea and oedema. Endotracheal intubation and ventilation may be required.
- Unnecessarily high FiO<sub>2</sub> may encourage constriction of the ductus.
- Chronic hypoxaemia is associated with high haematocrit and raised cardiac output in order to maintain oxygen delivery.
- Thrombo-embolism can occur with dehydration or excessive diuretic therapy.

### **Specific lesions in CHD**

#### *Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) (Figure 12.3)*

- Shunt is at arterial level (PA and aorta).
- Closure of the ductus is a normal physiological adaptation to extrauterine life, and its persistence in neonates is a feature of immaturity (prematurity) or necessity ('duct-dependent' CHD). Abnormalities of ductal tissue may result in failure of the ductus to constrict in older infants.
- Magnitude of shunt depends on size of duct and relative resistances of pulmonary and systemic vasculature.
- A large L-R shunt may result in failure of a premature infant to wean from ventilation.
- Medical management encourages ductal constriction with cyclooxygenase inhibitors (e.g. indomethacin). Side effects and contra-indications include gastrointestinal haemorrhage, renal failure, intra-ventricular haemorrhage.
- Surgical ligation is via a left thoracotomy (after echocardiographic confirmation of normal cardiac configuration).
- Transcatheter closure with an occlusive device (coil or 'umbrella') is reserved for PDA in older infants.
- Untreated, a large duct can lead to progressive pulmonary vascular disease. Smaller shunts are at risk for endocarditis, aneurysm, calcification, and paradoxical emboli.



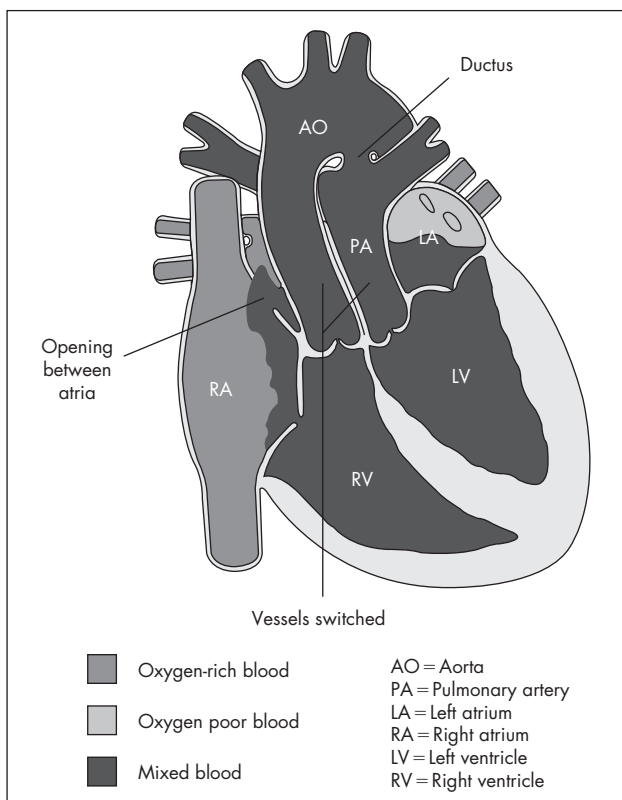
**Figure 12.3** Patent ductus arteriosus

*Transposition of the great arteries (TGA) (Figure 12.4)*

- The aorta arises from the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery from the left (systemic) ventricle.
- Mixing must occur for survival, either through a septal defect or patent ductus. Percutaneous balloon septostomy may be necessary to encourage this.
- Approximately 50% of cases have an associated VSD.
- More complicated and rare forms of TGA are associated with pulmonary stenosis, or atrioventricular discordance ('congenitally corrected' TGA), or ventricular hypoplasia (tricuspid atresia). These require individualised surgical palliation.

*Neonatal arterial 'switch'*

- This is the preferred surgical option for uncomplicated TGA.
- It aims for anatomical correction and includes re-implanting the coronary arteries into the left ventricular outflow tract, and closing any ventricular septal defect.
- Difficulties arise when there are abnormalities of the coronary artery anatomy or compromised perfusion.



**Figure 12.4** Transposition of great vessels

- There may be left ventricular dysfunction or ventricular dysrhythmia in the early post-operative phase.
- A 'late' switch is performed after a period of training of what will become the systemic ventricle, by placing a pulmonary artery band to obstruct the outflow from the left ventricle.

#### *Atrial 'switch'*

- This is a physiological correction, and less common nowadays.
- Surgery involves making baffles or channels in the atria such that venous blood returning from the body is diverted into the left ventricle, and then into the pulmonary artery (Mustard or Senning procedures).



- Post-operative atrial dysrhythmias are common.
- The disadvantage in the longer term is that the right ventricle eventually fails.

### **Coarctation of the aorta (CoA) (Figure 12.5)**

#### *Neonatal CoA*

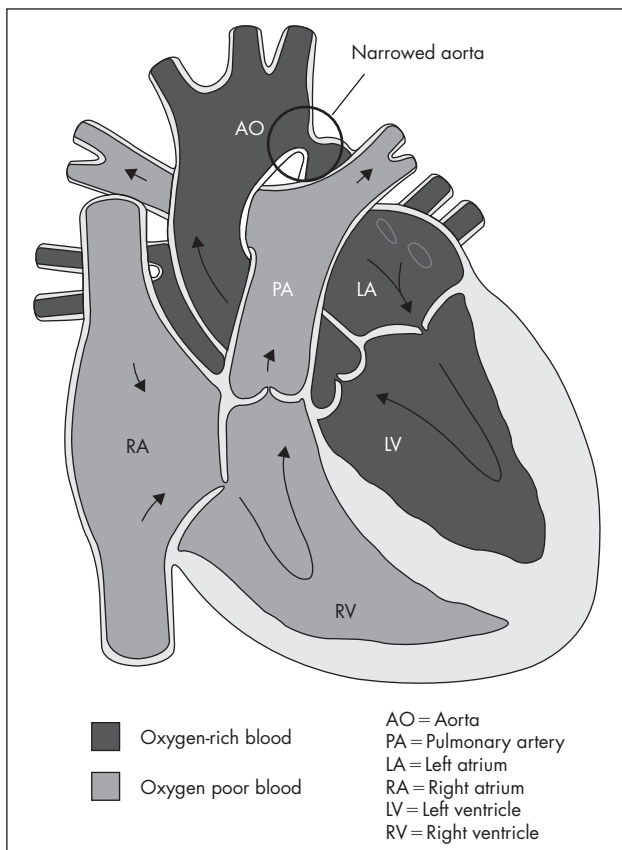
- In neonates, narrowing of the aorta occurs at or just proximal to the insertion of the ductus arteriosus.
- A more severe form is hypoplasia of the aorta itself (interrupted aortic arch).
- Systemic perfusion is dependent on a patent ductus arteriosus.
- Neonatal presentation is typically in cardiac failure, as the ductus starts to constrict. There can be rapid progression to cardiogenic shock with hypotension, acidosis and renal impairment.
- Resuscitation includes prostaglandin infusion, and IPPV and inotropic support in the sickest neonates.
- Surgical repair is by resection of the discrete coarctation and end-to-end anastomosis, or by using a flap of left subclavian artery to enlarge the aorta.

#### *Late presentation*

- The level of the coarctation is postductal.
- The clinical signs of murmur, differential hypertension, rib notching on chest X-ray, may be found on co-incidental medical examination.
- Collateral vessels develop which can cause troublesome bleeding at operation.
- Relief of the obstruction can result in rebound hypertension, requiring temporary vasodilator therapy or  $\beta$ -blockade.

### **Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) (Figure 12.6)**

- This is the combination of a ventricular septal defect and obstruction to pulmonary blood flow (usually at the outlet of the right ventricle, the infundibulum).
- There is secondary right ventricular hypertrophy and an abnormally positioned aortic outflow, which 'overrides' the ventricular septal defect.
- Blood flow to the lungs is reduced, but by variable amounts. Some children have few symptoms unless stressed, whereas others present early in infancy with cyanosis, particularly if the pulmonary arteries are also small.
- Hypercyanotic 'spells' are a result of spasm of the infundibular muscle and cause an increased shunt across the VSD to the systemic circulation (R-L).
- It is this *dynamic* aspect of the obstruction to pulmonary blood flow that accounts for both the intermittent nature of 'spells' and therapeutic interventions to curtail them.

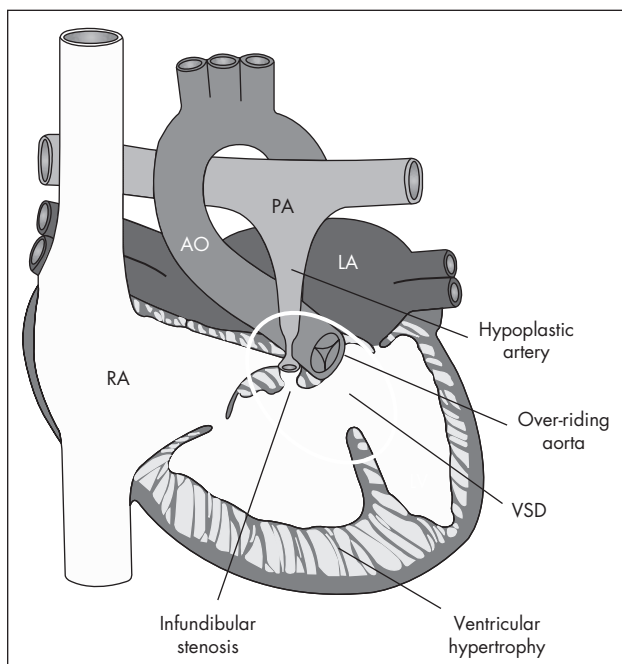


**Figure 12.5** Coarctation of aorta

- Hypercyanotic 'spells' are detected by cyanosis, a reduction in end-tidal carbon dioxide concentration, and systemic hypotension (Table 12.1).

Surgically, a Blalock Taussig shunt may be fashioned if the pulmonary arteries are too small to accommodate primary repair.

- Definitive repair involves closing the VSD and enlarging the right ventricular outflow tract.
- Post-operatively, the hypertrophied right ventricle is relatively non-compliant and dysfunctional. This is more likely if a ventriculotomy has been performed.



**Figure 12.6** Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF)

**Table 12.1** Management of hypercyanotic 'spells' in Tetralogy of Fallot

Hyperventilation with 100% oxygen to reduce pulmonary vascular resistance
Correction of hypovolaemia; colloid bolus
Elevation of the legs to increase systemic venous return
Administration of $\alpha$ -agonist to increase systemic vascular resistance, e.g. methoxamine, phenylephrine or norepinephrine by infusion
Analgesia and $\beta$ -blockade (propranolol, esmolol)

- Double outlet right ventricle (DORV) is a variant of Tetralogy of Fallot in which there is greater than 5% aortic override.
- Pulmonary atresia is an extreme form of TOF, very variable in its severity.

**Table 12.2** Features of the Fontan circulation

---

Blood flow from the systemic veins is directed to the pulmonary arteries
Cardiac output is dependent on adequate pulmonary blood flow
The pressure gradient across the lungs must be greater than PVR for forward flow
Factors promoting pulmonary blood flow are normovolaemia, avoidance of raised intra-thoracic pressure, spontaneous ventilation
Sinus rhythm maximises cardiac output
Anaemia should be corrected, to aid oxygen delivery
Anticoagulation is required

---

### The Fontan circulation

*Fontan – general points (Table 12.2)*

- The classical indication is for tricuspid atresia with hypoplastic right ventricle.
- Univentricular heart lesions that are unsuitable for biventricular repair can also be palliated by a staged Fontan operation (Stage 1 SVC to RPA; Stage 2 IVC to MPA/LPA). An example is palliation of HLHS.
- An atrial communication (fenestration) is sometimes left, with variable potential for desaturation.
- High systemic venous pressures can lead to pleural and pericardial effusions, and ascites.
- Some patients develop pulmonary arterio-venous malformations, which cause cyanosis.
- Longer term, there is a risk of ventricular failure.

### Post-operative cardiac management

- Paediatric cardio-pulmonary bypass (CPB) is similar to that in adult practice in that it involves full heparinisation, aortic and venous cannulation, non-pulsatile blood flow, membrane oxygenators, cross-clamping of the aorta, and myocardial preservation (usually cold crystalloid cardioplegia and topical ice).
- The systemic inflammatory response is also triggered.
- Paediatric CPB differs in that:
  - The prime volume of the CPB is large in relation to the child's circulating volume. Greater use is made of donated blood products, especially coagulation factors.
  - Greater use is made of profound hypothermia, including deep hypothermic circulatory arrest (DHCA). This facilitates surgical access to structures within the heart.
  - The magnitude of the systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) triggered by CPB is greater in neonates. Capillary leak is one of the manifestations of this.

**Table 12.3** Common problems following CPB

Temperature instability	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hypothermia if inadequately rewarmed</li> <li>• Hyperthermia with SIRS</li> </ul>
Hypovolaemia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Volume requirements increase with rewarming and vasodilatation</li> </ul>
Hypertension	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess analgesia and sedation</li> <li>• Increased risk of breakdown of surgical suture lines and haemorrhage if untreated</li> </ul>
Sinus tachycardia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess cardiac output, volume status, analgesia/sedation, fever, seizures</li> </ul>
Capillary leak	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Causes tissue and pulmonary oedema</li> <li>• Maintenance fluids are typically restricted to 50% of normal requirements in the early post-operative period</li> </ul>

- Pericardial, pleural drains and temporary epicardial pacing wires are routinely placed. Left atrial and pulmonary artery monitoring lines are placed under direct vision through the surgical field.

### Specific problems following CPB

Table 12.3 gives the common problems seen after CPB

#### *Bleeding*

- Heparin is reversed by protamine titration after cessation from CPB.
- The chest drains must be kept patent to allow blood to drain from pericardial and pleural spaces.
- Coagulation factors are diluted and inhibited by hypothermia, CPB, and transfusion of large volume. Platelet concentrate and fresh frozen plasma are often transfused particularly in neonatal surgery.
- Calcium should be administered with blood transfusion, and if ionised plasma concentration is low.
- An inhibitor of fibrinolysis such as aprotinin, initiated before CPB, can help reduce blood loss. It is reserved for patients at high risk of serious haemorrhage (e.g. repeat sternotomy, extensive suture lines, etc) because of the risks of anaphylaxis and concerns about venous thrombo-embolism.

#### *Tamponade*

- Is the external compression of the heart (usually by blood)
- Signs include elevated central venous pressure, low cardiac output, hypotension, tachycardia, dysrhythmia, desaturation
- Immediate resuscitation and treatment is required. The sternal wound is opened to relieve the compression. The cause is then identified.

#### *Low cardiac output*

- The causes of poor myocardial function post-operatively include:
  - The effect of SIRS

- Residual air in the coronary arteries after separation from CPB
- Inadequate myocardial preservation during CPB
- Dysrhythmia (may be exacerbated by electrolyte disturbance)
- Temporary pacing is required for symptomatic brady-dysrhythmia
- Lactate levels may be elevated

#### *Pulmonary hypertensive crisis*

- Defined as a sudden change in pulmonary vascular resistance, such that pulmonary blood flow is reduced and there is severe desaturation and hypotension.
- Susceptible patients are those undergoing repair of lesions with large L-R shunts, or obstructed pulmonary venous drainage.
- Initial management is hyperventilation with high FiO<sub>2</sub>.
- Specific therapies aim to reduce PVR.
- Inhaled nitric oxide, a specific pulmonary vasodilator, is effective in some patients.
- Prostacyclin and sodium nitroprusside produce both pulmonary and systemic vasodilatation.

#### *Renal dysfunction*

- Diuresis is normal following CPB (hypokalaemia can result, particularly with concomitant diuretic therapy).
- Acute renal failure is more likely in lesions that have involved obstructed systemic blood flow, or prolonged surgery. Recovery is usually complete once the cause is reversed.
- Temporary peritoneal dialysis may be required.
- This causes less respiratory disturbance in neonates and small infants if a continuous cross-flow method is used, avoiding a dwell cycle and abdominal distension.

#### *Neurological injury*

- Damage to the recurrent laryngeal and phrenic nerves are recognised complications of surgery in the chest (producing vocal cord palsy and diaphragmatic paralysis, respectively). Recovery is usual, although occasionally diaphragmatic plication is required to assist weaning from IPPV.
- Focal neurological injury and seizures can occur as a result of embolism (air, thrombus), particularly if there is communication between the systemic and pulmonary circulations (paradoxical embolism).
- Global ischaemic damage is a complication of CPB with low perfusion pressure or inadequate temperature control. Periods of DHCA are usually limited to the minimum required to effect surgical repair whilst providing some degree of neuro-protection at low temperatures.
- Ischaemia of the spinal cord occurs with prolonged cross-clamping of the aorta. It is a recognised complication of late repair of coarctation of the aorta.

## CHAPTER 13

## DYSRHYTHMIAS AND MYOCARDIAL DISEASE

**Dysrhythmias**

- Commonly observed in critically ill children
- Dysrhythmias which may not be a problem in the healthy child may compromise the critically ill one (Table 13.1 and 13.2)
- With increasing age, the heart rate decreases with an increase in stroke volume

**Bradycardias**

Asystole and pulseless electrical activity are emergency situations and have been discussed in Chapter 6.

*Sinus bradycardia*

Causes of this include:

- Sinus dysrhythmia with respiration
- Sinus arrest or exit block can cause sick sinus syndrome

**Table 13.1** Causes of cardiac dysrhythmias

*Primary rhythm disturbances*

- Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia
- Re-entry tachycardias
- Congenital AV block
- Congenital long QT syndrome

*Secondary rhythm disturbances*

- Post-operative dysrhythmias
  - Junctional ectopic tachycardia
  - AV block
  - Primary atrial tachycardia
  - Ventricular dysrhythmias
  - Sick sinus syndrome
- Metabolic derangements
  - Electrolyte disturbances
  - Endocrine causes
  - CNS injury
  - Hypothermia, hyperthermia
  - Hypoxia
  - Acute myocardial infarction
- Toxic
  - Tricyclic anti-depressants
  - Digoxin
  - Aminophylline
- Infections
  - Endocarditis, myocarditis
- Myocardial contusion from trauma

**Table 13.2** Types of dysrhythmia

*Bradycardia*

- Sinus bradycardia
- Second degree AV block
- Third degree AV block
- Atrial, junctional or ventricular escape rhythms
- Asystole

*Tachycardia*

- Supraventricular tachycardias
- AV reciprocating tachycardias
- Re-entry tachycardias
- Atrial flutter or fibrillation
- Junctional ectopic tachycardia

*Ventricular tachycardias*

- Premature ventricular complexes (ventricular ectopics)
- Ventricular tachycardia
- Ventricular fibrillation

- Vagal episodes, e.g. with syncope
- Parasympathetic stimulation (vagus) may lead to bradycardia due to:
  - Hypoxia
  - Apnoea
  - Nasopharyngeal suctioning
  - Endotracheal suctioning
  - Intubation
- Raised intra-cranial pressure
- Sick sinus syndrome following cardiac surgery, myocarditis, cardiomyopathy or ischaemia
- Oversedation

### Conduction abnormalities

First degree heart block occurs when all atrial impulses are conducted to the ventricles but with a prolonged P-R interval. Rhythm is regular.

Second degree heart block occurs when not all impulses are transmitted to the ventricles. These are divided into:

- Mobitz Type I block (Wenckebach phenomenon). The P-R interval gradually increases until an impulse is not conducted and a ventricular complex does not occur. This is due to a conduction delay within the AV node.
- Mobitz Type II block. This is characterised by the sudden drop of an atrial impulse without the increasing length of the P-R interval. QRS morphology may vary. Usually due to a conduction defect in the His conduction system. May progress to complete heart block.



- Complete or third degree heart block means that there is no conduction between the atria and ventricles. It is the commonest form of brady-dysrhythmia in childhood.

#### *Treatment*

- Correct possible cause
- Treatment of raised intra-cranial pressure
- Correct hypotension and hypoperfusion
- Use of atropine or isoprenaline (isoprenaline)
- Cardiac pacing may be required

### **Tachydysrhythmias**

#### *Sinus tachycardia*

This may be due to many causes:

- illness
- fever
- hypovolaemia
- pain
- distress and anxiety
- certain drugs, e.g. inotropes, aminophylline

#### *Supraventricular tachycardia*

- Tachycardias with rate greater than 200 bpm
- Usually due to re-entry phenomenon via an accessory pathway
- Often present with congestive cardiac failure, can have chest pain or irritability
- May present with normal blood pressure
- Can be confused with other causes of tachycardia with low cardiac output, e.g. fever, septic shock
- ECG shows regular rates in excess of 150 bpm and can reach 300 bpm (commonly 200–250 bpm)
- ECG complex demonstrates normal QRS morphology, but P wave morphology may be abnormal
- Table 13.3 details treatment options

#### *Atrial fibrillation*

- Rapid chaotic depolarisation of multiple atrial foci leading to ineffective atrial contraction with a variable ventricular rate which is irregularly irregular
- Causes include:
  - Rheumatic heart disease
  - Mitral valve disease
  - Atrial septal defects
  - Ebstein's anomaly

**Table 13.3** Treatment of SVT

- 
- ABC with oxygenation
  - Vagal manoeuvres:
    - Carotid sinus massage and the valsalva manoeuvre can be attempted
    - Diving reflex through iced water to head or face. Care as bradycardia or asystole can occur
    - Edrophonium 0.1–0.2 mg/kg acetylcholinesterase inhibitor
  - Adenosine
    - Affects SA node and AV conduction
    - Also can be used for diagnosis of wide complex QRS tachycardia
    - Has to be administered rapidly as it is metabolised by erythrocytes (half life 8–10 s)
    - Dose 50–250 µg/kg increased in 50 µg/kg increments
    - If the tachycardia responds and then recurs use the same dose
    - Action may be prolonged in patients with drugs that interfere with its metabolism or exaggerate its effects
    - Can cause chest pain, bronchospasm, can accelerate tachycardias via sympathetic stimulation
  - DC cardioversion (0.5–2 J/kg) but anaesthesia may be required
  - Pacing may be necessary
  - Maintenance therapy with amiodarone or digoxin. Propranolol in Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome (WPW)
- 

- Cardiomyopathy
- Hyperthyroidism
- Pulmonary embolus

- ECG demonstrates absent P waves and irregular and rapid ventricular rate with normal QRS morphology

#### *Atrial flutter*

- Very similar to atrial fibrillation but the ECG demonstrates a saw tooth pattern at 250–500 bpm
- Causes include:
  - Congenital heart disease
  - Cardiomyopathy
  - Rheumatic heart disease
  - Mitral valve prolapse
  - Pericarditis
  - Wolff-Parkinson-White (commonest cause under 1 year of age)

#### *Treatment*

- Propranolol if WPW
- DC cardioversion or overdrive pacing
- Digoxin will slow ventricular rate
- Amiodarone for prevention once returned to sinus rhythm

### *Junctional ectopic tachycardia*

- AV dissociation with ventricular rate (170–200 bpm) exceeding the atrial rate
- Post-op VSD, Mustard operation or Tetralogy of Fallot
- Myocarditis
- Regular rate with normal QRS morphology
- P waves can be seen after QRS due to retrograde conduction

### *Treatment*

- Often difficult
- Correct metabolic and electrolyte disturbances
- Digoxin – may slow rate
- Paired ventricular pacing to rapid rate leading to effectively only output on every second beat
- Induced hypothermia (35–37°C)
- Amiodarone
- Propranolol
- Surgical ablation of ectopic focus

## **Ventricular dysrhythmias**

### *Premature ventricular contraction*

- Wide abnormal slurred QRS without P wave
- Can be uniform or multiform (multifocal)
- Possibly at risk of worse ventricular dysrhythmias

### *Ventricular tachycardia*

- QRS prolonged
- Ventricular-atrial dissociation is often present
- Causes include:
  - Metabolic and electrolyte disturbance
  - Post-cardiac surgery
  - Myocarditis
  - Cardiomyopathy
  - Idiopathic
  - Prolonged Q-T syndromes
- Torsades de pointes is a variant of ventricular tachycardia in which the height of the complexes varies
- Occurs with anti-dysrhythmic drug toxicity, tricyclic overdose, hypovolaemia and prolonged Q-T syndromes

### *Treatment*

- Depends on haemodynamic status
- If not shocked lidocaine (lignocaine) 2 mg/kg repeat if necessary

- Procainamide or phenytoin may be successful
- Magnesium sulphate may be successful in torsades de pointes
- Amiodarone may also work
- If compromised circulation or unsuccessful pharmacological response, use DC shock under anaesthesia if required

### *Cardioversion*

Indications particularly in the patient with cardiovascular compromise include:

- Atrial flutter or fibrillation
- Supraventricular tachycardia
- Ventricular tachycardia
- Ventricular fibrillation

Adequate sedation or anaesthesia is required

### *Complications*

- Superficial burns
- Bradycardias including sinus arrest and exit block
- Injury to staff

## **Pacing (Table 13.4)**

### *Methods*

- Epicardial wires placed at surgery preferably atrial and ventricular
- Transvenous wire
- Oesophageal – due to close relationship to left atrium but only really useful for atrial problems, e.g. overpacing SVT
- Transthoracic by placement via a spinal needle either subxiphoid or left fifth intercostal space onto ventricle
- Transcutaneous – chest and back electrodes, higher current required

**Table 13.4** Indications for temporary pacing

- 
- Profound bradycardia
  - Conduction blockade
  - SVT
  - VT
  - Escape rhythms
  - Drug toxicity, e.g. propranolol, digoxin, verapamil
  - Electrolyte disturbance
  - Diagnosis
  - Post-cardiac surgery commonly:
    - Tetralogy of Fallot
    - Transposition of great arteries
    - AV canal
    - Tricuspid atresia
    - Complex congenital disease with WPW
-

### *Modes*

- Depends on whether fixed rate, demand or sequential pacing is required
- Can involve atrial, ventricular or both being paced
- Which method used depends on time and requirements, e.g. fixed ventricular pacing for the cardiovascularly compromised child requiring rapid pacing
- With tachydysrhythmias either slow atrial pacing is used to underdrive the arrhythmia or overdrive the rhythm with faster rates and abruptly stop the pacing allowing the return to normal rhythm to occur

### *Practical points*

- May need a skin reference electrode if there is only one ventricular wire
- Start at an appropriate rate for the patient
- Check stimulation threshold and increase the current to at least twice this level for constant capture
- Consider dual chamber pacing if possible
- Check function daily

### *Complications*

- Usually rare
- Failure to capture due to incorrect placement, displacement or myocardial damage
- Pericardial bleeding and tamponade usually at time of removal of surgically placed wires
- Ventricular dysrhythmias

## **Myocardial disease**

### *Ischaemia (Table 13.5)*

#### *Neonatal ischaemic disease*

- presents with tachypnoea, hypoxia, heart failure, ECG changes
- differential diagnosis involves echocardiography to exclude congenital heart disease such as TAPVD or transposition of the great arteries
- creatine phosphokinase or troponin may be elevated
- treatment is supportive with oxygen, ventilation if required and treatment for shock or heart failure

#### *Kawasaki Disease*

- acute, febrile, mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome
- mainly affect infants and small children under 4
- no cause found but can occur in clusters

**Table 13.5** Causes of myocardial ischaemia

*Neonatal ischaemic heart disease*

- Hypoxia
- Increased demand
  - Persistent transitional circulation
  - Pulmonary hypertension

*Congenital heart disease*

- Cyanotic heart disease (e.g. total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage, transposition of great arteries)
- Obstructive disease (e.g. aortic or pulmonary stenosis)
- Anomalous coronary arteries

*Increased demand*

- Catecholamine administration
- Head injury

*Vascular disease*

- Kawasaki disease
- Embolism
- Trauma

*Thoracic trauma*

*Hypoxic due to cardiac arrest*

- non-specific panvasculitis occurs
- endarteritis of major arteries can occur especially in the coronary arteries
- this leads to potential arrhythmias, myocarditis, myocardial ischaemia, aneurysm formation and coronary artery stenosis
- aneurysms resolve but can rupture and cause sudden death years later
- other findings include diarrhoea, aseptic meningitis, meatal ulceration, urethritis, jaundice, hepatitis
- diagnosis requires remittent fever, cervical lymphadenopathy, mucosal changes, erythema of palms and soles, conjunctival involvement, erythematous rash
- treatment includes supportive therapy and aspirin 100 mg/kg/day and then 30 mg/kg/day maintenance

## **Infections**

### *Endocarditis*

- difficult to diagnose especially as most intensive care patients have intra-vascular catheters which are prone to infection and positive blood cultures
- echocardiographic findings plus definite positive cultures needed to make diagnosis
- echocardiography of line tips is important
- blood cultures are important but may not be positive if the patient is already on antibiotics when a presumptive diagnosis may have to be made

- clots may need to be removed
- duration of therapy varies depending on organism
- prophylaxis for procedures which could cause bacteraemia is vital, e.g. for dental treatment

#### *Post-operative*

- about a third of all cases
- usually following valve replacement rather than other surgery
- early onset within 3 months has increased severity of clinical presentation
  - congestive cardiac failure and shock can occur
- may only present with a fever and positive blood cultures
- early onset usually coagulase – negative staphylococci, *Staphylococcus aureus* or less commonly gram-negative organisms
- late onset commonly streptococcal infection
- differential diagnosis includes pneumonia, urinary tract infection or meningitis, post-pericardiotomy syndrome, post-perfusion syndrome (CMV infection)

#### *Catheter-associated infection*

- diagnosis confirmed when infection is proven in blood culture and from the catheter tip
- catheter removal often necessary especially if candida is cultured
- antimicrobial therapy via catheter may be effective
- increased risk of endocarditis in patients with line infection and a catheter infection

#### *Viral myocarditis*

- enterovirus commonest cause, often Coxsackie B viruses
- spectrum from asymptomatic to severe disease with heart failure, dysrhythmia or sudden death
- late effects include dilated cardiomyopathy
- may be direct viral infection or antibody mediated damage
- fever, cyanosis, respiratory distress, tachycardia, congestive cardiac failure and ECG changes occur
- investigations include echocardiography
- treatment is supportive including bed rest, control of congestive cardiac failure, shock and dysrhythmias
- may need consideration for transplant

#### **Cardiomyopathy**

- hypertrophic cardiomyopathy is characterised by increase in ventricular wall thickness especially the septum

- can result in a gradient across the left ventricular outlet
- symptoms include dyspnoea, fatigue or exertion, chest pain, dizziness, syncope
- presentation with congestive cardiac failure, cardiomegaly or cyanosis is possible
- echocardiography demonstrates asymmetric septal hypertrophy and may show reduced ejection fraction and fractional shortening
- there is a risk of sudden death from ventricular dysrhythmias, especially if there is left ventricular outflow obstruction
- treatment is supportive and may include diuretics, inodilators and inotropes as appropriate
- treatment of the outflow obstruction may help
- consideration for cardiac transplantation may be necessary

### Hypertension (Table 13.6)

**Table 13.6** Causes of hypertension

---

*Essential*

*Renal*

Acute renal failure  
Chronic glomerulonephritis  
Chronic pyelonephritis  
Hydronephrosis  
Polycystic disease  
Dysplastic kidney  
Renal tumours  
Collagen diseases

*Vascular*

Coarctation of the aorta  
Renal artery abnormalities  
Renal vein thrombosis

*Endocrine*

Pheochromocytoma  
Neuroblastoma  
Cushings syndrome  
Primary aldosteronism  
Congenital adrenal hyperplasia

*Miscellaneous*

Intra-cranial tumours  
Drugs, e.g. corticosteroids  
Guillain-Barre syndrome  
Porphyria

*ICU related*

Inadequate sedation  
Recovery from critical illness especially treated with inotropes  
Withdrawal from sedation, e.g. withdrawal syndrome from opiate or benzodiazepine or rapid cessation of clonidine

---



Consider other possible causes:

- With tachycardia
  - Pain
  - Agitation
  - Seizures
  - Fluid overload
  - Drug effects
- With bradycardia
  - Raised ICP
  - Drug effects

#### *Treatment*

- treat the cause
- appropriate investigation
- use of anti-hypertensives depending on cause and situation, e.g. use glyceryl trinitrate (GTN) or labetalol infusion, nifedipine or atenolol by mouth

## CHAPTER 14

# NEUROLOGICAL AND NEURO-MUSCULAR DISEASE

### Pathophysiology

The brain is contained within a rigid box from about 3 months of age. An increase of one of the constituents within this cavity leads to a reduction of the others and then a rise in intra-cranial pressure. Insults to the brain can be considered as primary and secondary (Table 14.1).

#### *Consequences of brain insult*

- Trauma causes accelerating, decelerating and shear forces. This can lead to damage to blood vessels and intra-cranial bleeding. Sub-dural haematomas are most common. Surgical intervention may be required.
- Secondary injury is due to subsequent events commonly hypotension, hypoxaemia or both. This leads to reduced blood flow and reduced oxygen delivery. This can be worsened further by raised intra-cranial pressure. Further ischaemic damage can occur. Damage to the sodium-potassium pump leads to increased intra-cellular sodium and water and the development of cerebral oedema and potential cell death.
- Meningitis leads to inflammation occurring in the sub-arachnoid space. This can involve blood vessels leading to vasculitis. Infarction can result. Raised intra-cranial pressure and hypotension can also occur.
- The effects of status epilepticus are a combination of the effects of the cause, secondary insults occurring during the seizure such as hypoxia, hypoglycaemia and the effect of the seizure on the brain. Increased metabolic demands are usually met by increased blood flow. Seizures of more than 60 min may lead to permanent sequelae.

### Examination of the nervous system

Initial examination of the neurological system is by using AVPU, posture and the response of the pupils to light. 'P' corresponds to a Glasgow Coma Scale of 8 (Table 14.2).

More detailed neurological examination uses the Glasgow Coma Scale (Table 14.3). This requires modification below the age of 5.

Examination of the pupils is important to assess the possibility of intra-cranial hypertension or a space occupying lesion. A unilateral dilated and unresponsive pupil is indicative of a possible intra-cranial haemorrhage.

**Table 14.1** Causes of acute brain insult

• Traumatic	– blunt trauma
	– penetrating trauma
	– crush injury
	– non-accidental injury
• Cerebrovascular	– vascular malformations
	– thromboembolic events
• Metabolic	– hypoxia
	– cardiac arrest
	– drowning
	– suffocation
	– near miss sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS)
	– infection
	– meningitis, encephalitis
	– septicaemia
	– metabolic
	– hypoglycaemia
	– hypo or hypernatraemia
	– hyperosmolar states
	– hypothermia
	– hepatic encephalopathy
	– Reye's syndrome
	– haemolytic–uraemic syndrome
	– drug intoxication
	– poisoning
	– inborn error of metabolism
	– status epilepticus

**Table 14.2** AVPU score

A – Alert
V – Responds to voice
P – Responds to pain
U – Unresponsive
Also examine pupils and posture

### The unconscious child

Figure 14.1 gives an algorithm for the management of the unconscious child. Resuscitation is the initial requirement for early management. Subsequent management depends on history, examination and results of investigations (Table 14.4). Causes of coma are given in Table 14.5.

#### *Status epilepticus*

Status epilepticus is defined as a single or series of seizures lasting longer than 30 min without regaining consciousness between the seizures. Status epilepticus can be either generalised or focal.

Treatment needs to be instituted promptly as continued fitting may lead to neurological damage (approx 25%) or death (4–6%).

The cause and presenting features of status epilepticus in children vary considerably depending on age. In the newborn the features tend to

**Table 14.3** Glasgow Coma Scale

	Over 5 years old		Infants under 5	
Eye opening	Spontaneous	4	Spontaneous	4
	To voice	3	To speech	3
	To pain	2	To pain	2
	None	1	None	1
Verbal	Orientated	5	Coos and babbles	5
	Confused speech	4	Irritable cries	4
	Inappropriate words	3	Cries to pain	3
	Incomprehensible sounds	2	Moans to pain	2
	None	1	None	1
Motor	Obeys commands	6	Normal spontaneous movements	6
	Localises pain	5	Withdraws to touch	5
	Withdraws	4	Withdraws to pain	4
	Abnormal flexion	3	Abnormal flexion	3
	Extension	2	Abnormal extension	2
	None	1	None	1

be more subtle, variable in presentation and to include apnoea. The types of epilepsy can be classified into generalised or partial seizures (Table 14.6). There are four main categories of presentation (Table 14.7). The major causes are given in Table 14.8.

### *Effects*

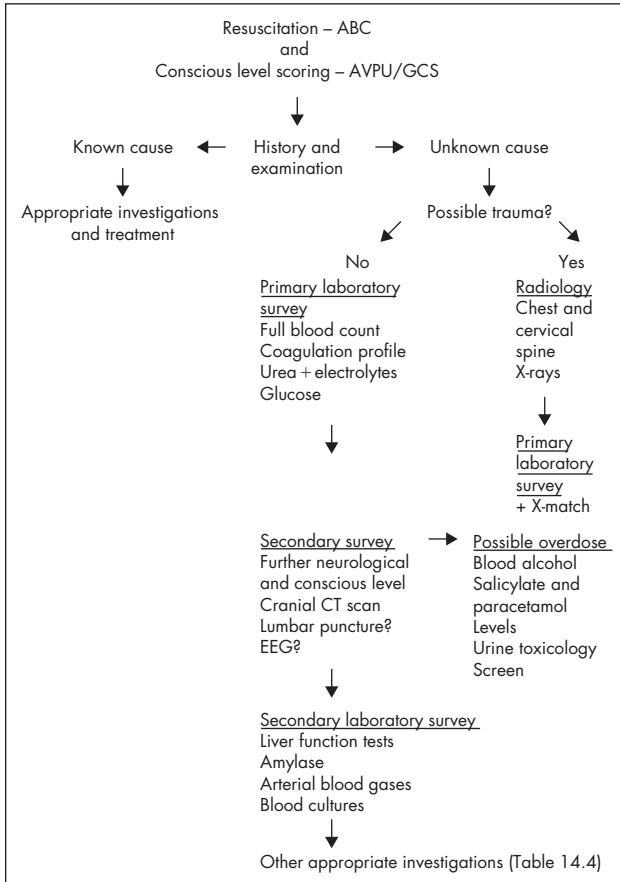
Status epilepticus has an effect on most body systems particularly if not treated promptly. Table 14.9 details these.

### *Management goals*

- Treat ABC
- Start treatment using status epilepticus protocol (Figure 14.2)
- Look for any metabolic or electrolyte disturbance and treat if found
- Look for other causes
- Prevention of seizure reoccurrence
- Treatment of complications

### *Investigations*

- Blood glucose
- Electrolytes, renal and hepatic function including calcium and magnesium
- Blood gases including acid-base status
- Full blood count
- Other appropriate to illness



**Figure 14.1** Algorithm for the management of the unconscious child

e.g. blood culture; anti-convulsant levels; metabolic, toxicology, viral titres

- CT scan may be appropriate when stabilised
- Lumbar puncture if raised ICP is ruled out

#### *Supportive treatment*

Intubation and ventilation may be necessary for:

- airway protection

**Table 14.4** Possible investigations for unconscious child

Serum	Urine	CSF	Culture
Mycoplasma	Porphyrins	PCR for herpes simplex	Swabs
Viral antibodies	Organic acids	Viral antibodies	Viral culture
Ammonia	Amino acids	Culture and sensitivity	
Amino acids	Orotic acid		
Organic acids	Lactate		
Ketones	Ketones		
Fatty acids	Bile acids		
Triglycerides	Glycosaminoglycans		
Cholesterol			
Very long chain fatty acids			
Bile acids			
Immunoglobulins			
Lactate			
Pyruvate			
Acetoacetate			
Hydroxybutyrate			
Porphyrins			
Urate			
Minerals			
Vitamins			
Metals and metal binding proteins			

**Table 14.5** Causes of coma

Cardio-respiratory arrest
<i>Trauma</i>
• Head injury
• Sub-dural, extra-dural haemorrhage
<i>Infection</i>
• Meningitis
• Encephalitis
• Overwhelming septicaemia
• Brain abscess
<i>Intra-cerebral bleed</i>
• Sub-arachnoid haemorrhage
• Cerebrovascular accident
Poisoning
<i>Metabolic</i>
• Hypoglycaemia
• Electrolyte disturbances
• Hepatic failure
• Renal failure
Status epilepticus
Cerebral tumour

**Table 14.6** Types of status epilepticus

Centralised	Focal or partial
Tonic-clonic	Hemiconvulsion – hemiplegia –
Tonic	epilepsy
Clonic	Focal motor
Myoclonic	Epilepsia partialis continua
Absence	Complex partial

**Table 14.7** Major causes of admission with status epilepticus (approximately 25% each)

Known epilepsy
Febrile convulsions
Acute insult
No known cause

**Table 14.8** Main causes of acute insult causing status epilepticus

	Newborn	Infant	Child
Acute	Hypoxic ischaemia  Intra-cranial haemorrhage	Sub-dural haematoma Trauma	Trauma  Intra-cerebral haemorrhage Hypoxia
Infection	<i>E.coli</i> meningitis Encephalitis	Meningitis Encephalitis	Hypoglycaemia Encephalitis Brain abscess
Metabolic	Hypoglycaemia Hypocalcaemia Hypomagnesaemia  Hyper or hyponatraemia	Hypoglycaemia Hypocalcaemia Hyper or hyponatraemia	Hypoglycaemia Hypocalcaemia Hyper or hyponatraemia Liver disease
Genetic	Pyridoxine deficiency		
Malformation	Neuronal migration defect Chromosome abnormality	Sturge-Weber Neurofibromatosis	
Other	Toxins Drug withdrawal		Febrile convulsion Idiopathic

- apnoea (may be treatment induced)
- hypoxia
- correction of acidosis
- coma and raised intra-cranial pressure
- to control seizures

It is important to remember that if muscle paralysis is used for intubation or maintenance of ventilation that this will mask the clinical

**Table 14.9** Physiological changes during status epilepticus

Parameter	0–30 min	30–60 min	>60 min	Complication
Blood pressure	Increases	Increases	Decreases	Hypotension
Heart rate	Increases	Increases	Increase or decrease	–
Arterial oxygen	Decrease	Decrease	Decrease	Hypoxia
Arterial CO <sub>2</sub>	Decrease	Variable	Increase	Raised ICP
pH	Decrease	Decrease	Decrease	Acidosis
Temperature	Increase	Increase	Increase markedly	Pyrexia
Pulmonary secretions	Increase	Increase	Increase	Atelectasis
Serum K <sup>+</sup>	Increase	Increase	Increase	Dysrhythmias
Serum CPK	Normal	Increase	Increase	Renal failure
Autonomic activity	Increase	Increase	Increase	Dysrhythmias
Pupils	Dilated	Dilated	Dilated	–
Cerebral blood flow	Markedly increase	Increase	Increase	Cerebral bleed
Cerebral metabolic rate	Increase	Increase	Increase	Ischaemia
Blood glucose	Increase	Variable	Decrease	Hypoglycaemia

CO<sub>2</sub> – carbon dioxide; CPK – creatine phosphokinase; ICP – intra-cranial pressure; K<sup>+</sup> – potassium.

effects of seizures. The electrical effects will continue and thus EEG or cerebral function monitoring should be available.

#### *Other problems*

- Symptomatic use of fluids and inotropes as appropriate
- Maintenance of adequate urine flow to prevent the possibility of renal failure due to myoglobin excretion
- Hyperpyrexia can be reduced by using cooling methods and by stopping the energy production from fitting. If necessary use muscle relaxation following ventilation.
- Correction of metabolic and electrolyte abnormalities. In particular take care with hyperglycaemia in neonates.

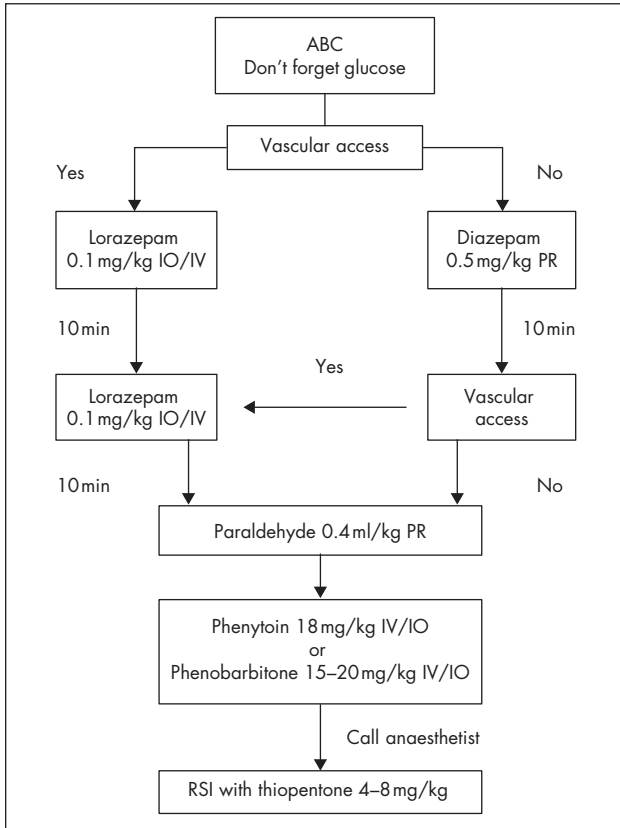
### **CNS infections**

#### *Meningitis*

This is a common disease in the paediatric population. There is an age related association with different causative organisms (see Table 14.10).

There is an increasing incidence of tuberculous meningitis. The incidence of meningitis increases following basal skull fracture, post neurosurgery, if there is a CSF shunt and in patients with immune deficiency from whatever cause.





**Figure 14.2** Treatment algorithm for status epilepticus

**Table 14.10** Causes of bacterial meningitis with age

0-2 months	Group B streptococci Enteric ( <i>E.coli</i> , <i>Klebsiella</i> , <i>Proteus</i> ) <i>Listeria</i>
2-4 months	Group B streptococci <i>Streptococci pneumoniae</i> <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> type B <i>Meningococcus</i>
>4 months	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Meningococcus</i> <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> type B (under 5)

There is evidence that intra-cranial pressure is increased and that there is a degree of hydrocephalus in most patients on CT scan.

### *Presentation*

- Initial flu-like symptoms
- Fever, irritability
- Drowsiness progressing to coma
- Headache
- Photophobia
- Vomiting
- Loss of appetite
- Neck stiffness
- Seizures occur in 30%
- Remember to check for signs of septicaemia, e.g. purpuric spots in meningococcal disease

### *Focal neurological signs*

- Sub-dural effusions
  - tend to occur at a week or later
  - commonest after *Haemophilus influenzae* type B meningitis
  - usually resolve spontaneously
  - indications for drainage include raised ICP, seizures, paresis, empyema
- Brain abscess
  - tends to present with worsening neurological signs and fever
- Hemiparesis or stroke

### *Assessment*

- Neurological examination – may be difficult if ventilated and paralysed
- Ultrasound, CT scan or MRI of head for cause
- Doppler flow studies of major cerebral vessels
- Radionuclide scanning
- EEG

### *Prolonged or recurrent fever*

- Fever persisting after 5 days or recurring
- Commonest cause is nosocomial infection but consider:
  - Ventriculitis
  - Sinusitis
  - Mastoiditis
  - Sub-dural effusions
  - Drug fevers

- Sub-dural empyema
- Disseminated infection, e.g. septic arthritis

### Treatment

- Large dose of IV antibiotics:
  - Cefotaxime and ampicillin in neonates
  - Cefotaxime and vancomycin in older children
- Change antibiotics to appropriate when sensitivities from cultures are known
- Supportive treatment as required including management of raised intra-cranial pressure
- Steroids have been shown to reduce neurological sequelae of patients with *Haemophilus influenzae*
- Isolation of patient for 24 h
- Chemoprophylaxis for relatives or close contacts may be needed

### Neonatal meningitis

- Most commonly acquired either at the time of delivery (streptococcal, *E. coli*, listeria) or hospital acquired
- Should be considered in the diagnosis of any unwell neonate and a lumbar puncture performed if appropriate

### Viral encephalitis

- Infection of brain parenchyma following viraemia
- Prodromal viral illness including fever, lethargy
- Irritability and increasing coma
- Meningism, seizures, hemiparesis
- Poor feeding in infants
- Cerebral infarction
- May have spinal cord involvement
- Herpes simplex is commonest cause and only treatable virus (Table 14.11 and 14.12)

### Investigations

- Routine septic screen

**Table 14.11** Causes of viral encephalitis

Enterovirus	Adenovirus
Herpes simplex	Epstein-Barr virus
Varicella	Mumps
CMV	Measles
Rabies	HIV

**Table 14.12** Differential diagnosis of encephalitis

*Infection*

- Meningitis
- Brain abscess
- Pertussis
- Lyme disease

Drug intoxication

*Metabolic*

- Reye's syndrome
- Hepatic encephalopathy
- Inborn errors of metabolism
- Uraemia

*Presentation of cerebral cause*

- Epilepsy
- Tumour
- Cerebrovascular accident (CVA)

*Other*

- Trauma
- Post-infectious encephalopathy

- Lumbar puncture
  - culture
  - pressure
  - PCR
- Metabolic studies
  - ammonia
  - organic acids
- Urine toxicology
- Imaging
  - ultrasound
  - CT scan
  - MRI – brain inflammation and oedema
- EEG
- Viral titres

*Complications* (see also Table 14.13)

- Cerebral oedema
- Raised ICP
- Seizures
- Neuronal destruction

**Herpes simplex encephalitis**

*Neonates*

- Diagnosis is often difficult. Approximately 50% have virus isolated from CSF in neonates, less than this in older children. PCR is often required.

**Table 14.13** Complications of CNS infection

These depend on the age of child, organism involved, antibiotic therapy commencement and adequacy of treatment.

*Acute*

- Inappropriate ADH secretion
- DIC
- Septic shock
- Cerebral oedema
- Recurrent fever
- Seizures

*Long-Term*

- Mild to severe mental impairment
- Visual and auditory damage
- Epilepsy
- Hydrocephalus
- Behavioural abnormalities
- Hypothalamic disorders
- Hemi or quadriparesis

- Treatment with large dose acyclovir (4–5 mg/kg/day) for 2–3 weeks
- Can relapse if insufficiently treated

*Infants and children*

- Tends to be a similar illness as in adults
- Flu-like illness
- Fever, malaise
- Headache
- Vomiting
- Decreased consciousness level
- Seizures
- Neck stiffness
- Behavioural and speech changes
- Neonates may present non-specifically with sepsis and thus a lumbar puncture, if appropriate, should be a routine part of the investigation of sepsis in this age group
- Speed of onset depends on the organism

*Lumbar puncture*

- Lumbar puncture should only be performed if intra-cranial pressure is not raised and there is no coagulopathy. Complications include cerebral herniation or epidural or spinal haematoma respectively.
- Raised white cell count initially neutrophils then hyper-cytosis
- Xanthochromia and elevated numbers of red cells can occur
- Glucose level usually normal

- Repeat LP at 4 days may demonstrate a rise in viral antibody titre. A four fold rise is indicative of a likely organism.
- Convalescent CSF will often still give a diagnosis

**Reye's syndrome**

- Usually occurs shortly after an acute viral illness
- Most commonly in 6–12 year olds
- Associated with treatment with aspirin
- Much reduced incidence since its use has been limited

*Presentation*

- Nausea and vomiting occur usually 4–5 days after onset of the viral illness
- Altered behaviour, confusion leading to coma and death
- May develop decorticate then decerebrate posture with development of cerebral oedema
- Usually occurs within 2 days of presentation
- Elevation of transaminases to at least twice normal
- Liver histology consistent with syndrome aids diagnosis

*Treatment*

- Supportive control of especially cerebral oedema
- Early diagnosis and maintenance of blood glucose important
- No specific therapies
- High level of neurological sequelae in survivors

**Pituitary disorders**

- Inappropriate ADH (SIADH) secretion is defined as hyponatraemia and hypo-osmolality with normovolaemia. Also there is excessive urinary sodium loss and less than maximally dilute urine without renal disease.
- Treatment is fluid restriction with normal sodium intake
- Not all children with low sodium have SIADH

**Diabetes insipidus**

- opposite effect to SIADH leading to hypernatraemia and fluid depletion
- treatment fluid replacement
- DDAVP either by bolus or infusion to reduce urine output

**Neuro-muscular disease causing respiratory failure**

- Failure of the nervous system leading to reduced function of the muscles of respiration (Table 14.14)
- Treatment consists of treating the basic cause and supportive with oxygen, intubation and ventilation

**Table 14.14** Neurological causes of respiratory failure

Cerebral	Central hypoventilation syndrome Drug intoxication Seizures
Spinal cord	Trauma Anterior Horn cell disease Poliomyelitis Spinal muscular atrophy Tetanus
Peripheral motor nerve	Phrenic nerve injury Guillain-Barre syndrome Intoxication, e.g. heavy metal, organophosphates Acute intermittent porphyria
Neuro-muscular junction	Myasthenia gravis Botulism
Skeletal muscle cell	Muscular dystrophy Congenital myopathies Myotonic dystrophy Inborn errors of metabolism
Electrolyte disorders	Hypo or hyperkalaemia Hypophosphataemia

- Comments on some conditions are given below:

#### *Tetanus*

- Severe painful muscle rigidity and spasms due to the neurotoxin, tetanospasmin from the organism *Clostridium tetani*
- This binds to presynaptic terminals of inhibitory neurones at the spinal cord level
- Allows uninhibited excitation leading to contraction of muscles leading to spasms
- The toxin binds irreversibly to the neuro-muscular junction leading to the need for new synapses to be formed for recovery
- Can affect laryngeal or respiratory muscles leading to airway obstruction or respiratory failure
- Incubation 3 days to 3 weeks
- Prevention by routine passive immunization
- Management is to prevent spasms by reducing stimulation and managing respiratory and cardiovascular complications
- Wound cleaning, antibiotics and supportive sedation, neuro-muscular relaxation and ventilation may be required
- Ventilation may be needed for 3–5 weeks

#### *Poliomyelitis*

- Severe form leads to widespread muscle paralysis and respiratory failure

- Respiratory failure depends on where the CNS is affected, e.g. central control of ventilation, phrenic nerve palsy, bulbar nerve palsy
- May lead to the need for chronic ventilation

### *Spinal muscular atrophy*

- Autosomal recessive disorder
- Early presentation has a worse prognosis
- Progressive proximal weakness and hypotonia
- Paradoxical respiration occurs
- Present with failure to achieve motor milestones and recurrent pneumonia. Intelligence is usually normal.
- Diagnosis involves EMG and muscle biopsy
- Difficult to separate moderate and severe disease at presentation

### *Guillain-Barre syndrome*

- Acute inflammatory peripheral neuropathy causing demyelination leading to weakness, paralysis and respiratory failure
- Associated autonomic nervous dysfunction including arrhythmias and blood pressure instability
- Often history of previous illness upper respiratory tract infection (URTI) or gastroenteritis or surgery 2–3 weeks previously
- Classically commences as symmetrical leg weakness which can progress proximally involving the diaphragm and pharynx
- Also have numbness and paraesthesiae
- May continue progressing for up to 2 weeks and followed by slow remission
- Areflexia is also present
- Treatment includes ventilatory support and plasmapheresis (daily for 5 days) or intra-venous  $\gamma$  globulin
- Most make a reasonable recovery of respiratory function

### *Phrenic nerve injury*

- Most commonly due to trauma either during birth or cardiac surgery
- Presentation varies from mild to severe respiratory distress
- Post-cardiac surgery it may present as failure to wean from the ventilator with a raised hemi-diaphragm on chest X-ray
- Confirmation by fluoroscopy of the diaphragms
- Usually recovers post surgery 2–6 weeks
- Diaphragmatic plication may be necessary

### *Myasthenia gravis*

- Chronic disorder with increasing tiredness of skeletal muscle during the course of the day



- Due to acetylcholine receptor antibodies
- ICU admission follows thymectomy or swallowing and respiratory fatigue
- Anti-cholinesterases will make diagnosis and help palliate disease
- Corticosteroids and plasmapheresis may be useful

### *Muscular dystrophy*

- Congenital disorders leading to progressive respiratory failure
- Commonest is Duchenne's which is X-linked
- Gradual deterioration of skeletal and cardiac muscle with increasing age
- Present with pneumonia or post-operatively following scoliosis surgery
- Non-invasive ventilation increases length of survival

### *Critical illness neuropathy*

- Critical illness neuropathy occurs in children particularly after severe sepsis and multi-organ failure
- Generalised weakness with respiratory muscle involvement occurs leading to slow weaning from the ventilator
- Can also occur in patients with status asthmaticus treated with high dose steroids
- Particularly associated with neuro-muscular blockade
- Hyporeflexia or areflexia occurs but usually spares facial and ocular muscles
- Diminished sensory function
- Prophylaxis should include the minimal use of neuro-muscular blocking agents, avoiding aminoglycosides at the same time as neuro-muscular blockage, correction of serum magnesium and phosphate and minimise steroid use
- Prolongation may also occur in liver and renal failure
- Recovery is usually complete but takes weeks

## CHAPTER 15

# GASTROINTESTINAL AND HEPATIC DISORDERS

**Table 15.1** Main gastrointestinal problems on PICU

- 
- Bleeding
  - Ileus
  - Diarrhoea
  - Malnutrition
- 

### Bleeding

- diffuse, erosive, stress gastritis common
- presentation often as coffee ground or bright red blood in the naso-gastric aspirate or as haematemesis and malaena
- prevention important especially in conditions in which there is a high risk of erosions: burns, trauma, sepsis, acute respiratory failure, acute hepatic failure, steroid administration
- frequently contributes to death
- prevention includes early enteral feeding, sucralfate, H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists, antacids

### *Treatment*

- intra-venous fluids including blood products
- surgical opinion may include endoscopy, ultrasound, arteriography, cautery to bleeding site may be necessary
- suppress further bleeding with enteral antacids, intra-venous H<sub>2</sub> antagonists
- if necessary embolisation by arteriography or operative intervention

### Ileus

Causes include:

- post-operative due to surgery
- hypoxia due to shock
- effect of drugs (e.g. morphine)
- toxic megacolon
- intussusception

### *Diagnosis*

- Abdominal distension
- Nausea and vomiting or increased nasogastric losses
- Decreased bowel sounds

- Dilatation of intestine
- Localised obstruction; may have abdominal pain

#### *Treatment*

Depends on cause but should include:

- Surgical opinion
- Nasogastric tube and decompression
- Avoidance of potential causes
- May require prokinetics, e.g. erythromycin for ileus

### **Diarrhoea**

- Malabsorption
- Infection
  - e.g. colitis due to *Clostridium difficile*
  - bacterial infections, e.g. *Salmonella*, *E.coli*
  - viral infections, e.g. rotavirus
- Drugs:
  - Antibiotics
  - Chemotherapy
  - Feeds
  - Lactulose
- HIV

#### *Treatment*

- cause, check faecal culture
- treat symptoms, e.g. TPN
  - antidiarrhoeal agents
- avoid transmission to other patients

### **Malnutrition**

Occurs frequently in long-term patients on the PICU causing a hypermetabolic state which is characterised by:

- Increased metabolic rate
- Increased sodium levels
- Water retention
- Breakdown of skeletal muscle

#### *Treatment*

Start feeding as soon as possible:

- Enteral feeding preferable
- Tube feeding by constant infusion associated with less reflux and diarrhoea
- Bolus feeding is however more physiological and possibly beneficial

- If enteral feeding fails start parental nutrition
  - needs central access
  - require appropriate mixture of amino acids, fatty acids and carbohydrates
  - should be commenced early if possible

### Specific GI problems

#### *Necrotising enterocolitis*

- associated with prematurity, low birth weight infants
- no obvious cause known but probably involves hypoxic injury to the intestinal tract
- usually occurs within the first 3 weeks of life
- symptoms usually include abdominal distension, ileus, regurgitation and vomiting, malabsorption of carbohydrates, bloody stools
- abdominal X-ray shows fluid levels with intra-mural gas in the bowel wall

#### *Treatment*

- Antibiotics
- IV fluids
- Nasogastric tube and decompress for 7–14 days
- TPN
- Frequent X-rays
- Treatment of DIC using fresh frozen plasma (FFP)
- May need laparotomy and ileostomy
- Long-term may develop short gut syndrome which can lead to malabsorption, need for long-term TPN, cholestasis and cirrhosis of the liver

#### *Gastro-oesophageal reflux*

- Common in neonates and infants and may not be symptomatic
- Causes apnoea, laryngospasm, bronchospasm, bradycardia, recurrent stridor, recurrent chest infections and possibly sudden infant death syndrome
- More common in patients with neurological impairment, e.g. cerebral palsy and after oesophageal surgery

#### *Treatment*

- thickened feeds
- increase gastric pH, e.g. omeprazole, ranitidine
- surgical – fundoplication with or without gastrostomy
- regurgitation and aspiration can occur during induction of anaesthesia and intubation especially with a potentially full stomach, e.g. after trauma

- cricoid pressure should help reduce regurgitation during intubation. However it should be removed if the patient is actively vomiting.
- treatment for pulmonary aspiration is antibiotics including traditionally metronidazole, physiotherapy and suction
- acid aspiration syndrome can lead to ARDS in the lung

#### *Intussusception*

- usually occurs in first year of life
- sudden onset on severe intermittent abdominal pain, with vomiting, and blood in diarrhoea
- dehydration and sepsis can occur later

#### *Treatment*

- Supportive, e.g. nasogastric drainage
- Reduction by barium enema or laparotomy
- May develop severe sepsis requiring antibiotics and intensive care

### **Hepatic failure**

- Hepatitis C is more likely to cause liver failure than A or B (Table 15.2)
- Toxic causes include overdose of iron, paracetamol or hypersensitivity to NSAIDs, some antibiotics and anti-convulsants
- Raised liver function tests are common in intensive care probably due to multifactorial causes

**Table 15.2** Causes of hepatic failure

---

Hepatocellular
Hepatitis A, B, C or D
Genetic and metabolic causes
e.g. $\alpha_1$ -antitrypsin deficiency
Wilson's disease
Neonatal diseases
e.g. rubella
herpes simplex
syphilis
Drugs and toxins
Obstructive
Intra-hepatic or extrahepatic atresias
Choledochal cyst
Cystic fibrosis
Cholangitis
TPN related cholestasis
Others
Hypoxia
Reye's syndrome

---

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- Poor prognostic indicators and complications of hepatic failure are given in Tables 15.3 and 15.4.

*Liver function tests*

- The most sensitive test of liver function is the prothrombin time
- Bilirubin levels give an important indication of metabolism and are especially important in the neonate
- Albumin gives an indication of the synthetic properties of the liver but it is also dependent on other factors especially renal loss
- Most of the transaminase results have little correlation with the degree of hepatic failure particularly as falling levels may indicate loss of liver cells

*Hepatic encephalopathy*

- Worsens as the liver failure worsens
- Ammonia level increases with deepening encephalopathy but the actual level does not correlate
- Plasma levels of  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABA) are raised in hepatic encephalopathy. This is an inhibitory neurotransmitter. See Table 15.5 for a clinical grading of hepatic encephalopathy.

**Table 15.3** Poor prognostic indicators of hepatic failure

- Aetiology: non-A non-B viral hepatitis or paracetamol
- Age <10
- Severe encephalopathy
- Prolonged prothrombin time greater than 90 s
- Renal failure
- Rapid speed of onset

**Table 15.4** Complications of hepatic failure

Encephalopathy  
Cerebral oedema  
Gastrointestinal bleeding  
Ascites  
Respiratory failure  
Hepatorenal syndrome  
Increased susceptibility to infections

**Table 15.5** Grading of hepatic encephalopathy

Grade	Clinical features
I	Minor functional effects
II	Drowsy but rousable, confusion
III	Agitated to comatose with response to pain
IV	Unresponsive and unrousable

*Treatment*

- This is essentially prevention and supportive
- Avoid events which precipitate encephalopathy
- Reduce protein intake
  - Measures to prevent gastrointestinal bleeding
  - Avoidance of metabolic and electrolyte disturbance, e.g. hyponatraemia, hypokalaemia, hypoglycaemia
  - Prompt identification and treatment of infection
  - Avoid sedatives
- Supportive may include intubation and ventilation, oxygenation
- Treatment of cause
- Reduction of ammonia load by reducing protein intake
- Decreasing transit time with lactulose, use of neomycin to alter gut flora
- Flumazenil (GABA antagonist) may improve level of hepatic encephalopathy
- Charcoal haemoperfusion
- Liver transplantation

*Cerebral oedema*

- Main cause of death
- Develops as liver failure worsens in most patients
- Need to measure ICP as CT and MRI are not sensitive enough but care with abnormal clotting

*Treatment includes:*

- Maintenance of cerebral perfusion pressure with inotropes
- Avoid rises in ICP, e.g. coughing
- Reduce fluid intake
- Osmotic diuresis with mannitol and furosemide
- Reduce cerebral metabolic demand by control of seizures, hyperthermia and possibly the use of barbiturate coma

*Gastrointestinal bleeding*

- Many patients suffer this and 30% die from this
- Coagulopathy occurs due to a reduction in the synthesis of clotting factors V, VII and X
- DIC may also occur
- Stress gastritis is reduced by administration of H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists or antacids
- Portal hypertension leading to oesophageal varices can occur

*Ascites*

- Worsens respiratory failure
- Associated with portal hypertension

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- Sodium retention and decreased oncotic pressure due to low serum albumin
- Treatment includes reducing sodium intake, slow diuresis using spironolactone

*Hepatorenal syndrome*

- Although frequently overloaded, often there is intra-vascular depletion
- This leads to a reduced renal output, an elevated urea and creatinine and a low urine sodium
- Treatment includes a fluid bolus, use of diuretics and measurement of CVP

*Infections*

- There is an increased susceptibility to infection due to bacteraemia from gut organisms, urinary tract infection, aspiration pneumonia, bacterial peritonitis

**Pancreatitis***Causes*

- Congenital anomalies
- Cystic fibrosis
- Amino acid dyscrasias
- Hyperlipoproteinaemias
- Association with hepatic failure

*Clinical features*

- Epigastric pain with radiation to the shoulder
- Tender abdomen
- Nausea and vomiting
- Decreased bowel sounds
- Tachycardia, tachypnoea

*Investigations*

- Raised serum amylase
- Hypocalcaemia
- Raised white cell count

*Treatment*

- Rest of pancreas by stopping enteral feeding, nasogastric decompression, using TPN
- Appropriate IV fluids and analgesia
- Complications may include abscess and pseudocyst formation



## CHAPTER 16

### RENAL DISEASE

#### Acute renal failure (Table 16.1)

- often part of multiple organ failure
- usually recovers without need for chronic treatment
- frequently multifactorial cause including sepsis
- defined as reduction in renal function with or without changes in urine volume
- anuria is an urine volume of less than 0.5 ml/kg/h

#### Physiology

- kidneys receive 20–30% of the cardiac output
- flow is autoregulated
- blood pressure is not a good indicator of renal blood flow because blood pressure tends to be maintained in hypovolaemic states while blood flow to the kidneys might be markedly reduced
- renal medulla is prone to hypoxaemia as oxygen consumption is high
- the blood flowing through the medulla has a low haematocrit
- the juxta-glomerular apparatus releases vasoactive substances to regulate blood flow to the glomeruli and hence alter the glomerular filtrate rate
- reduced blood flow leads to reduced oxygen delivery. In response to this, the juxta-glomerular apparatus reduces filtration. Fluid is retained and sodium reabsorption is reduced thus reducing oxygen consumption.

**Table 16.1** Causes of renal failure

<i>Prerenal/hypoperfusion</i>	
Fluid loss	Haemorrhage, dehydration, septic shock, burns, surgery, diabetes mellitus
<i>Decreased cardiac function</i>	
Anatomical	Obstruction, e.g. urethral valves, tumour, blood clot, congenital renal disease, e.g. polycystic kidneys
Toxic	Myoglobin Haemoglobin (haemolysis) Contrast dyes
Immune	Haemolytic-uraemic syndrome Nephrotic syndrome Glomerulonephritis
Tumour lysis syndrome	
Infection	
Drugs	
Vascular	Renal artery or vein thrombosis

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- medullary hypoxaemia is the main physiological effect causing acute renal failure

*Prevention*

Certain circumstances may be predictable:

- myoglobinuria/haemoglobinuria treat with aggressive hydration, increased urine flow by diuretics, alkalisation
- tumour lysis/uric acid nephropathy
  - high fluid volumes to produce high urine flow
  - alkalisation to prevent uric acid precipitating
  - xanthine oxidase inhibitors
- in general:
  - maintenance of adequate perfusion:
    - fluid resuscitation
    - inotropes
    - blood
- treat the cause of sepsis

*Management*

- treatment of the patient for causative illness
- hypoperfusion needs appropriate treatment with fluids, blood and inotropes
- invasive cardiovascular monitoring
- appropriate cultures and antibiotics for sepsis
- appropriate operative drainage of septic foci

*Fluids*

- once acute renal failure has become established after resuscitation, fluid management involves replacing losses. These need to be measured.
- insensible losses are 300 ml/m<sup>2</sup>/day
- temperature above 38°C leads to increased requirements about 12.5% per degree
- add measured losses, e.g. nasogastric aspirate, urine, beware diarrhoea

*Electrolytes*

- Hyponatraemia (see Chapter 8) (water overload)
- Hyperkalaemia (see Chapter 8)
- May have causes of increased potassium generation, e.g. haemolysis, tissue necrosis, acidosis

**Renal replacement therapy (Table 16.2)**

- method used depends on patient's size and condition and equipment and experience of staff (Table 16.3)

**Table 16.2** Reasons for use of renal replacement therapy

---

Fluid overload, pulmonary oedema
Fluid removal to allow feed, transfusions, etc
Hyperkalaemia
Reduce acidosis
Endogenous toxins, e.g. urea, ammonia
Exogenous toxins, e.g. lithium, salicylate
Possibly removal of bacterial toxins, e.g. in meningococcal sepsis

---

**Table 16.3** Methods available

---

Peritoneal dialysis
Haemodialysis
Slow continuous ultrafiltration (SCUF)
Plasmafiltration
Haemofiltration
Continuous arterio-venous CAVH
Continuous veno-venous CVVH
Continuous arterio-venous with dialysis CAVHD
Continuous veno-venous with dialysis CVVHD

---

**Peritoneal dialysis***Advantages*

- simple and easy to use especially in infants
- urea removal is gradual and steady

*Complications*

- may effect ventilation because of diaphragmatic splinting
- pleural effusions
- peritonitis
- catheter obstruction

*Disadvantages*

- respiratory effects
- less good than other techniques for fluid removal

**Haemodialysis**

- intermittent treatment
- removal of solute from patients' serum
- less useful because not continuous

*Complications*

- Hypotension
- Bleeding
- Embolism

- Catheter infection
- Disequilibrium syndrome due to osmotic shifts

### **Plasmafiltration**

- the membrane contains larger pores than that for haemofiltration
- allows passage of molecules with molecular weight up to 3 000 000 Daltons
- thus endotoxins can be removed
- also lose albumin, immunoglobulins, protein-bound substances
- use in sepsis where large turnover of plasma can be achieved
- one plasma volume clearance clears about 50% of the plasma volume
- replacement fluid is FFP and albumin
- can be used intermittently in Guillain-Barre syndrome

### **Haemofiltration**

#### *CVVH*

- primarily used for fluid removal
- allows removal of acid and potassium
- requires central venous access, blood pump, haemofilter, ultrafiltrate pump
- CVVH is pump driven and does not rely on patient's blood pressure
- anticoagulation required

#### *Complications*

- Bleeding
- Hypotension – decreased intra-vascular volume, increased inotropes
- Catheter infections
- Cooling can occur (an advantage in pyrexial patients but may mask continuing sepsis)

#### *CAVH*

- depends on patient's perfusion pressure
- needs arterial site for flow
- if hypotensive leads to low ultrafiltrate

#### *CVVHD/CAVHD*

- dialysate is pumped through filter to clear urea in addition to the ultrafiltration
- urea and creatinine clearance depends on dialysate flow

### **Haemolytic-uraemic syndrome**

- multi-system disease of the microcirculation
- often accompanies *E. coli* enteric infection
- may lead to renal failure

- signs include:
  - pallor, oliguria, tachycardia
  - irritability, ataxia, tremor, behaviour changes
- investigations show anaemia, thrombocytopenia, uraemia, may have evidence of haemolysis

### *Complications*

- Renal failure requiring dialysis
- Colitis
- Sepsis
- Myocarditis, pericarditis, pericardial effusion, ventricular dysfunction

### *Treatment*

- plasmapheresis, dialysis
- supportive

### **Nephrotic syndrome**

- protein loss in urine leads to hypoalbuminaemic oedema
- mostly caused by nephritis and treatment is by steroids
- oedema worsened by sodium retention
- prone to infections including peritonitis, pneumonia, urinary tract infection (UTI)
- raising the albumin level is probably only short-lived but with diuretics may establish a diuresis
- other treatment is supportive

### **Haemoglobinaemia**

- caused by red blood cell lysis, e.g. post-transfusion reaction, extra-corporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), haemolytic-uraemic syndrome
- red blood cell stroma may cause mechanical obstruction in the renal capillaries
- treatment includes aggressive hydration and alkalinisation of urine flow with bicarbonate and carbonic anhydrase inhibitors
- mannitol and furosemide increase urine flow and may help the tubular obstruction
- exchange transfusion or plasmapheresis may lower levels

### **Myoglobinaemia**

- following muscle injury and rhabdomyolysis including cardiac arrest
- diagnosis includes myoglobin in the urine and an elevated creatine phosphokinase (CPK)
- hyperkalaemia and renal failure may ensue
- treatment is alkalinised diuresis keeping the pH >7.0

## CHAPTER 17

### HAEMATOLOGY AND ONCOLOGY

**Table 17.1** Haematological problems on PICU

---

Anaemia
Thrombocytopenia
Neutropenia
DIC
Sickle cell disease
Tumours including leukaemias
Bone marrow transplantation

---

**Table 17.2** Causes of anaemia

- 
- Abnormal red cell production
    - Disorders of proliferation and differentiation
    - Disorders of DNA synthesis
    - Disorders of haemoglobin synthesis
  - Increased RBC destruction
    - Membrane defects
    - Abnormal metabolism
    - Mechanical destruction
    - Infection
    - Antibody mediated
    - Hypersplenism
  - Blood loss
- 

#### Sickle cell disease

Causes of ICU admission include:

- susceptible to infection
- vasocclusive crises:
  - acute occlusion of vessels due to sickling
  - treatment includes oxygenation, hydration, analgesia and antibiotics
  - acute chest syndrome. Symptoms include – cough, dyspnoea and chest pain. This can be caused by infection, pulmonary infarction or vasocclusive crisis. There is a variable course from mild pneumonia to fatal pulmonary disease.

Treatment includes:

- antibiotics and analgesia
- intra-venous fluids avoiding dehydration
- exchange transfusion
- heparinisation may be useful
- stroke – may need to control intra-cranial pressure

- may present with bony or abdominal crises
- acute splenic sequestration
  - presents with pallor, profound hypovolaemia and circulatory failure
  - treatment with fluids including blood

### **Leukaemias/tumours**

- causes of ICU admission include:
  - septicæmia following chemotherapy with neutropenia
  - implanted line infections (including *Candida*)
- tumour lysis syndrome

#### *Tumour lysis syndrome*

- hyperuricaemia, hyperkalaemia, hyperphosphataemia
- may lead to hypercalcaemia and acute renal failure
- usually precipitated by cell lysis after commencing chemotherapy

#### *Signs*

Arrhythmias due to hyperkalaemia or hypercalcaemia.

Renal failure. This is in part due to urate and calcium phosphate deposition in the kidney. This leads to obstruction in the tubules.

Prevention of renal failure important:

- generous hydration
- prevention of formation of toxic metabolites – allopurinol
- alkalinisation of urine
- haemodialysis may be required
- ECG monitoring

### **DIC**

Many causes but gram-negative and meningococcal sepsis and major trauma the commonest causes. This leads to fibrogen consumption and microthrombi formation.

#### *Signs and symptoms*

- haemorrhage
- microthrombosis leading to organ ischaemia and failure including:
  - purpura fulminans
  - renal failure
  - confusion and coma
  - pulmonary and GI disturbance
- consumption of clotting factors and inhibitors of coagulation

*Treatment*

- underlying cause
- blood products, FFP, platelets, cryoprecipitate, Protein C
- the use of heparin has been advocated but shown to increase bleeding in adults

**Bone marrow transplantation**

The major complications after bone marrow transplant leading to PICU admission are detailed in Table 17.3.

**Table 17.3** Complications following bone marrow transplantation

---

Pancytopenia
Infections
Mucositis
Chemotherapy induced drug toxicity
Graft versus host disease
Rejection
Veno-occlusive disease
Relapse

---

*Pancytopenia*

- for 2–4 weeks following chemotherapy
- possibility of opportunistic infection
- prolonged depressed T cell and B polymorph function
- G-CSF may reduce the time of this depressed cell function
- require irradiated blood products
- maintain platelets above  $20\,000\text{ mm}^{-3}$
- if bleeding maintain above  $50\text{--}100\,000\text{ mm}^{-3}$

*Infection*

- prevention better than cure including prophylactic antibiotics
- specific infections tend to vary with time post transplant
- fungi: candida, aspergillus
- viruses: HSV, EBV, CMV, RSV
- pneumocystis

*Chemotherapy induced toxicity*

- pulmonary toxicity important especially after bleomycin
- toxicity worsened by high  $\text{FiO}_2$  and high airway pressures

*Graft versus host disease (GVHD)*

- due to T cells attacking the host
- affects skin, GI tract, liver and lungs
- acute insidious onset with fever, rash, diarrhoea, interstitial pneumonia, nausea and vomiting



- chronic GVHD begins between day 100 and 2 years post transplant
- needs early recognition often by biopsy in sub-acute phase and aggressive immunosuppression along with prophylaxis against fungal and pneumocystic infections

#### *Veno-occlusive disease*

- obliteration of small hepatic venules
- onset 1–3 weeks after bone marrow transplantation
- weight gain, hepatic enlargement, ascites, raised bilirubin may lead to encephalopathy
- treatment includes supportive treatment such as ventilation, fluid and electrolyte management
- repeat ultrasounds of flow in portal blood system helps with monitoring progress of disease

#### **Solid tumours**

Patients with various other tumours may well present to the PICU following major surgery requiring ventilation, management of major peri-operative blood loss or epidural analgesia. Some of the problems which may lead to admission for other reasons are given below.

Compromised airway:

- Cystic hygroma
- Laryngeal papillomata
- Intra-thoracic tumours

Compromised breathing:

- Intra-thoracic tumours
- Diaphragmatic splinting from intra-abdominal tumours

Hypertension

- Renal tumours
- Pheochromocytoma

Cerebral tumours

- Raised ICP
- Reduced conscious level
- Loss of gag reflex, etc – posterior fossa tumour

Sepsis

- Following chemotherapy
- Line associated

Children with intra-thoracic tumours may present with stridor and a compromised airway. They are at grave risk of tracheal collapse on induction of anaesthesia and therefore senior anaesthetic help should be available if intubation and ventilation is required. It is preferable to attempt other methods to reduce the airway obstruction first, e.g. steroids, nebulised adrenaline, helium-oxygen inhalation.

## CHAPTER 18

### ENDOCRINE DISORDERS

#### Glucose metabolism

**Table 18.1** Causes of hyperglycaemia

---

Stress response  
 Catecholamine response  
 Hypothermia  
 Dextrose administration  
 Diabetes mellitus

---

**Table 18.2** Causes of hypoglycaemia

---

*Deficient substrate*  
 Ketotic hypoglycaemia  
 Inadequate infused glucose IV

*Deranged endocrine balance*  
 Hyperinsulinism including infants of diabetic mothers  
 Hypothyroidism  
 Adrenal insufficiency  
 Glucagon deficiency

*Defective release from liver (inborn errors)*  
 Glycogen storage diseases I, III, IV  
 Galactosaemia  
 Fructose intolerance

*Liver disease*  
 Hepatitis  
 Cirrhosis  
 Reye's syndrome  
 Hepatic failure

*Inborn errors of amino acid metabolism*  
 Maple syrup urine disease  
 Propionic acidemia  
 Isovaleric acidemia  
 Tyrosinosis  
 Methylmalonic aciduria

*Deficiency of fatty acid oxidation*  
 Medium and long chain acetyl CoA dehydrogenase deficiency

*Drug-induced hypoglycaemia*  
 Insulin  
 Salicylates  
 Propranolol  
 Alcohol  
 Sulphonylureas  
 Paracetamol

---

**Diabetic ketoacidosis**

Patient may present with:

- history (previously known diabetes)
- familiar history – polyuria, polydipsia, weight loss
- headache
- abdominal pain
- vomiting
- lethargy
- hyperpnoea

Can present with:

- profound shock
- coma
- respiratory failure
- dysrhythmias

Investigations:

- blood gases including pH
  - electrolytes
  - urea
  - glucose
  - osmolality
  - ketones
  - lactate
  - calcium
  - magnesium
  - phosphate
  - serum amylase (may be moderately raised – salivary isoenzyme)
- It is important to monitor acid-base status, glucose and electrolytes frequently during the early stages.

*Management*

- ABC
- Fluid replacement is in three sections
- Volume replacement with 0.9% saline or colloid
- Maintenance fluid
- Fluid for dehydration
- Consider as if no more than 10% dehydrated
- Deficit should be given over 48 h
- Replacement fluid should initially be 0.9% saline until glucose has fallen to 12 mmol/l

*Potassium*

- Potassium needs to be given as there is large depletion of the intra-cellular ion
- Insulin will reduce plasma  $K^+$
- Add 20 mmol KCl per 500 ml bag of fluid
- Frequent U & E estimation necessary
- Monitor ECG for hyper or hypokalaemia

*Insulin*

- Blood glucose will be falling because of the fluid replacement
- Use of continuous infusion is preferred
- Commence at 0.1 units/kg/h of actrapid
- If blood glucose falls too quickly ( $>5$  mmol/l/h) then reduce infusion
- Switches off ketone production
- Reduce rate of infusion when glucose level falls below 12 mmol/l
- Preferable to increase % glucose delivered rather than stop the insulin infusion

*General principles*

- Keep close eye on fluid balance
- If concerned slow rehydration down and consider transfer to PICU

**Complications (Table 18.3)**

Shock – due to inadequate fluid replacement, need arterial, CVP and urinary catheter to adequately assess resuscitation

*Cerebral oedema*

- cause of mortality with poor outcome approximately 1% of admissions
- higher risk than in adults
- usually occurs in newly diagnosed diabetes often several hours after admission when all seems to be well
- symptoms include headache, reduced conscious level, bradycardia, papilloedema, fixed dilated pupils, occasionally polyuria due to diabetes insipidus
- theory is that rapid correction of fluid loss with reduction in high glucose levels leads to cerebral oedema due to the hyperosmolar state of brain cells
- may be direct effect of insulin on  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  and water entering brain cells
- treatment involves the prediction that it may occur and therefore correct the fluid depletion slowly over 48 h
- if cerebral oedema occurs, intubation and ventilation is indicated

**Table 18.3** Complications of diabetic ketoacidosis

---

Cerebral oedema
Pulmonary oedema
Dysrhythmias
Hypokalaemia
Hypoglycaemia (over correction)
Hypocalcaemia

---

- CT scanning and/or ICP monitoring should be considered
- mannitol may be useful
- outcome is poor therefore prevention is important

### **Hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic non-ketotic coma**

- Rare in childhood
- Characterised by coma with hyperglycaemic dehydration without ketoacidosis
- Causes include lack of water, too much glucose or excess glucagon secretion
- Treatment fluid boluses for shock
- Care with insulin as blood glucose can drop very rapidly

### **Hypoglycaemia**

- Consider as a cause of fitting, jitteriness and in all neonates
- Treatment is by giving 10% dextrose 5 ml/kg

### **Thyroid disease**

- Thyrotoxicosis presents rarely to intensive care in children
- Symptoms are often insidious in onset
- Can be precipitated by infection, trauma, surgery, diabetic ketoacidosis
- Symptoms include hyperactivity of the sympathetic system nervousness, tachycardia, weakness
- Also auto antibody effects such as goitre and exophthalmos
- Thyroid crisis can lead to fever, tachycardia, dysrhythmias, abdominal pain, leading to hyperpyrexia, coma, cardiovascular collapse
- Associated with family history or other known associated conditions such as diabetes mellitus, Down's syndrome, Addison's disease and other autoimmune diseases

#### *Treatment*

- Supportive 'ABC'
- Fluids and electrolyte correction
- Treatment of pyrexia
- $\beta$ -blockade (propranolol 0.01 mg/kg repeated until circulation controlled maximum 5 mg) and anti-thyroid drugs required

### Hypothyroid

- Can be primary hypothyroid or sick euthyroid syndrome
- Commonest cause is non-thyroid illness causing depression of T3 and sometimes T4 without TSH elevation
- In adults it has been shown that correlation with severity of illness occurs but levels are difficult to raise with supplements
- Various drugs affect hormone levels

### Adrenal disease

#### *Phaeochromocytoma*

- Catecholamine secreting tumour from adrenal medulla or sometimes within the sympathetic nervous chain
- Can be multiple or familial
- Effects are due to markedly raised levels of epinephrine and nor-epinephrine
- Sustained hypertension progressing to encephalopathy; cardiac failure can occur
- Can have paroxysmal episodes with palpitations, headache, flushing, feelings of impending doom
- Diagnosis is by urinary catecholamine metabolites

#### *Treatment*

- Surgical removal
- However, surgery may cause severe hypertensive episodes particularly during tumour manipulation
- $\alpha$ -receptor blockade needs to be instigated prior to  $\beta$ -blockade. Phentolamine and propranolol are used.
- Post-op the blood pressure may fluctuate. Hypotension can be treated with fluids and blood products.

Persistent hypertension may be due to further phaeochromocytoma tissue or another tumour.

## CHAPTER 19

## INBORN ERRORS OF METABOLISM

Can be admitted to PICU with:

**Known diagnosis**

- post-operative
- intercurrent illness
- metabolic imbalance

**Unknown diagnosis**

- neonatal
- change of diet or hypoglycaemia
- incidental finding

Children may have had perinatal diagnosis, e.g. phenylketonuria, galactosaemia.

Often presentation is non-specific (see Table 19.1). It may be confused with or present at the same time as sepsis. Family history is important.

**Investigations***Initial*

Blood sugar	FBC
Serum electrolytes	Clotting
Bicarbonate and acid-base	LFTs
Ammonia	Free fatty acids (FFA) and ketones
Urine for odour, acetest, organic and amino acids	
Lactate	

*Other investigations*

- Blood culture
- Amino acids, carnitine, creatinine kinase

**Table 19.1** Signs and symptoms of inborn errors of metabolism

Vomiting	Acidosis
Dehydration	Hyperammonaemia
Hypoglycaemia	Jaundice
Lethargy	Hepatomegaly
Cerebral oedema	Cardiomyopathy
Seizures	
Ataxic movements	
Coma	
Respiratory distress	

- Urine culture
- CSF lactate and culture
- Keep sample of blood, urine and CSF for further analysis

If the patient has a metabolic acidosis:

- check if adequately resuscitated
- calculate anion gap. If  $>12$  investigate cause of the acidosis as likely to be inborn error.
- ketosis and hypoglycaemia:
  - glycogen storage disease
  - gluconeogenesis defect
  - non-ketotic hypoglycaemia
  - fatty acid oxidation defect
- lactic acid and lactic:pyruvate ratios
- high lactate and high ratio is seen in:
  - anaerobic respiration
  - respiratory chain defect
  - mitochondrial myopathy
  - pyruvate carboxylase deficiency
- low ratio:
  - pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency
- high levels with normal ratio:
  - pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency
  - defect in gluconeogenesis

### Specific groups of disorders

#### *Urea cycle disorders*

- hyperammonaemia
- no acidosis
- normal glucose
- specific disorders:
  - citrullinaemia, argininaemia, argininosuccinicacidaemia
- non-specific elevation of amino acids
  - ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency (OTC)
  - carbamylphosphate synthase deficiency (CPS)

#### *Organic acidaemias*

- hyperammonaemia (usually only around newborn period)
- relapsing course possible
- severe acidosis with vomiting and dehydration with ketosis
- may be difficult to distinguish from renal tubular acidosis



### *Lipid disorders*

- usually present after a fast with vomiting and non-ketotic hypoglycaemia proceeding to coma
- may also have cardiomyopathy

### *Carbohydrate disorders*

- galactosaemia may present with jaundice, acidosis, hypoglycaemia, gram-negative sepsis
- others may cause lactic acidosis

### *Treatment – general*

- Supportive including antibiotics
- Dextrose for low BM
- Stop enteral feed. Give 10% Glucose IV.
- Preferable to add insulin if patient becomes hyperglycaemic rather than reducing dextrose concentration to stop protein breakdown and accumulation of toxic metabolites

### *Hyperammonaemia*

If cause unknown give:

- arginine 300 mg/kg/day IV – reacts with ammonia to aid excretion
- sodium benzoate 500 mg/kg/day IV – conjugates with glycine
- sodium phenylbutyrate 600 mg/day IV – conjugates with glutamine
- carnitine 200 mg/kg/day IV in four doses per day – aids elimination of organic acids

Avoid alkalosis

- do not hyperventilate
- use bicarbonate if pH <7.2

If ammonia >500  $\mu\text{mol/l}$  or >300  $\mu\text{mol/l}$  with encephalopathy commence high turnover CVVH. Acute reduction of ammonia is important for outcome.

### *Other treatments*

- CVVH may also be used for severe acidosis and in maple syrup urine disease
- Carnitine helps to excrete organic acids
- Specific treatments depending on diagnosis

## CHAPTER 20

## INFECTION AND RELATED ILLNESS

**Meningococcal septicaemia**

- May progress very rapidly with mortality of up to 50%.
- All patients with suspected meningococcaemia should be considered for admission to ICU and vigilantly observed for the first 24–48 h.

*Clinical features*

- Often preceded by a prodromal coryzal (flu-like) illness for a few days.
- Symptoms include: fever, rash, drowsiness, headache, irritability, convulsions, poor feeding, vomiting, and diarrhoea. Can present with or without meningitis.
- Rash may initially be absent or be preceded by less typical maculopapular rash.
- Signs (neck stiffness, hypotension, coma) and the petechial non-blanching rash can develop rapidly.
- The course of the disease during the first 24–48 h can be extremely unpredictable.

**Glasgow Meningococcal Septicaemia****Prognostic Score (GMSPS)**

- The GMSPS is a clinical scoring system that can be calculated rapidly and frequently and is used to predict severity. Score  $>8$  indicates severe disease. Score  $>12$  has a high mortality (Table 20.1).

During treatment it is important to re-examine the patient frequently and consider:

- Persistent tachycardia – consider more fluid
- Cold peripheries and increased capillary refill time aim for  $<3^{\circ}\text{C}$  core-peripheral difference and less than 3 s respectively
- Tachypnoea/hypoxia

**Table 20.1** Glasgow Meningococcal Septicaemia Prognostic Score

BP $<75$ mmHg systolic, age $<4$ years; $<85$ mmHg systolic, $>4$ years	3
Skin/rectal temperature difference $>3^{\circ}\text{C}$	3
Modified coma scale score $<8$ or deterioration of $>3$ points in 1 h	3
Deterioration in perceived clinical condition in the hour before scoring	2
Absence of meningism	2
Extending purpuric rash or widespread ecchymoses	1
Base deficit (capillary or arterial) $>-8$	1
Total	15

- Confusion
- Hypotension – need to keep BP sufficient to maintain urine output above 1 ml/kg/h

#### *Initial management*

- Optimise oxygenation
- If poor respiratory effort or comatose will need early intubation and ventilation (but see below)
- Obtain IV/IO access. Take bloods for:
  - Blood cultures – for diagnosis
  - FBC – may see diplococci, low platelets
  - Clotting – may be prolonged – DIC
  - U&E – hypokalaemia/hyperkalaemia
  - poor renal function
  - Calcium – low in severe disease
  - Magnesium – low in severe disease
  - Glucose – may be low
  - Acid-base status – metabolic acidosis
- Give antibiotic either cefotaxime 50 mg/kg qds or ceftriaxone 80 mg/kg od
- Fluids 20 ml/kg 0.9% NaCl, 4.5% human albumin solution (HAS) or synthetic colloid
  - repeat as necessary 20 ml/kg
- Inotropes consider after 40–60 ml/kg of fluid
  - dobutamine initially at 10 mcg/kg/min
  - dilute solution can be given peripherally
- Lumbar puncture should not be performed in a suspected meningococcal septicaemia because of risk of coning due to raised intra-cranial pressure

### **Elective ventilation**

#### *Advantages*

- Reduces work of breathing, reduces myocardial oxygen requirements and reduces risk of pulmonary oedema developing while high volume fluid replacement continues.
- Most children with a GMSPS of >8 will require ventilation because of cardiovascular instability or decreasing level of consciousness.
- However, induction with thiopentone can cause severe hypotension at conventional dosage by vasodilatation and reduced cardiac output. If possible commence inotropes before ventilation. Ketamine 1–2 mg/kg IV is more cardiovascularly stable and can be used but care with raised ICP.
- PEEP should be added to reduce pulmonary oedema; start at 5 cm H<sub>2</sub>O.

*Disadvantages*

- May worsen cardiovascular status because of:
  - raised intra-thoracic pressure due to ventilation reducing venous return
  - sedation reducing endogenous catecholamines, in addition to effects of sedatives on cardiovascular system

*Essential monitoring*

- Central line – aim for CVP 12–14 cm H<sub>2</sub>O
- Arterial line – blood pressure and gas monitoring
- Urinary catheter – urine output, i.e. adequate BP and circulatory volume
- Swan-Ganz catheter may help guide effectiveness of inotropes and fluid replacement
- In smaller children repeat echocardiography/trans-oesophageal doppler can give some indication of cardiac output trends with inotrope changes

*Further treatment*

Continued fluid replacement is the mainstay of treatment:

- Colloid: Use boluses of 10 ml/kg 4.5% HAS to keep CVP within above limits.

Some children may require several times their circulating volume. The commonest mistake is to give too little fluid.

Continual reassessment of capillary refill time, heart rate and core-peripheral temperature gradient is important. Consider colloid infusion of 1–3 ml/kg/h if frequent boluses are required.

Crystalloid: Restrict crystalloids to two thirds of maintenance. This minimises leak of fluid from intra-vascular space into interstitial compartment. Use 10% dextrose/0.45% saline. Dextrose concentration may need to be increased if BM remains <5 mmol/l.

Blood and blood products should be given as dictated by repeat haemoglobin, platelet and clotting levels.

- Inotropes

Not an alternative to adequate fluid replacement. Start immediately if elective ventilation considered or if 40 ml/kg colloid required for resuscitation. Double doses every 5 min if no response.

Note all inotropes work more effectively at normal blood pH. Therefore correction of this may help their effectiveness.

- Use dobutamine initially up to 20 µg/kg/min. If not sufficient commence adrenaline for 'cold' shock. May also need noradrenaline if the patient develops 'warm' shock.

**Other therapies***Prostacyclin*

The vasodilator, prostacyclin, has been used as a peripheral vasodilator for impending peripheral gangrene. It may also help reduce the

metabolic acidosis due to increased peripheral perfusion. It will counteract some of the peripheral effects of adrenaline. Dosage is 5–20 ng/kg/min via a separate central line lumen. There is no direct evidence that it is of benefit.

#### *Bacterial anti-toxin*

Recent studies on bacterial anti-toxin drugs has shown some benefit. However, the benefit is probably reduced by late administration of the drug.

#### *Calcium*

- Hypocalcaemia is an indicator of severe disease
- Bolus 0.2 ml/kg 10% calcium gluconate
- Consider infusion. Useful inotrope in neonates and infants.
- Needs separate central line lumen
- Monitor levels 6–8 hourly
- Recent evidence suggests that giving calcium may worsen mortality in animal models and that it should only be used in refractory hypotension

#### *Hypomagnesaemia*

If  $<0.75$  mmol/l give 0.2 ml/kg of 50%  $\text{MgSO}_4$  over 30 min. Care with hypotension during administration.

- Hypo or hyperkalaemia can occur
- Hypoglycaemia
- Frequent BM monitoring and increase dextrose in fluids as necessary

#### *Steroids*

- Dexamethasone 0.4 mg/kg bd for 2 days (if meningitis present) is sometimes given but not recommended
- Hydrocortisone 1 mg/kg/dose tds for up to 5 days. May be useful to help catecholamine dependence. Measure cortisol first.

#### *DIC*

- Treat if clinical signs of bleeding. Prolongation of prothrombin time is an indicator of severity of disease.
- Discuss with haematologist recorection with FFP/cryoprecipitate/platelets
- Also consider Vitamin K

#### *Protein C*

- Evidence that aggressive correction of the disturbance of coagulation modulators (protein C, protein S, antithrombin III) improves outcome

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- Reduced mortality in critically ill adults using activated Protein C
- Measured levels of Protein C in meningococcal disease are often less than 10% of normal
- Rate of serious bleeding double that of controls

*Metabolic acidosis*

- Correct with sodium bicarbonate
- May respond to fluids and/or prostacyclin

*Other possible problems*

- Raised ICP
- Seizures
- Poor urine output – consider CVVH
- Plastic surgical referral for ischaemic limbs. Consider compartment pressure measurement and possible escharotomies.

*Other diagnostic requirements*

- Throat swab
- Skin scrapings
- Rapid antigen screen
- PCR
- Convalescent serology
- Convalescent CSF

*Prophylaxis*

- Rifampicin or ciprofloxacin to child and contacts (close family)
- Consider staff prophylaxis only if in close proximity to patient's fluids
- Vaccination if appropriate strain identified

**Human immunodeficiency virus infection**

- Usually transmitted by vertical transmission from mother. This can be reduced by anti-retroviral therapy in pregnancy.
- Length of illness is shorter than in adults
- Many have protected asymptomatic phase
- Diagnosis can be made by PCR
- Admission to PICU usually due to respiratory failure (Table 20.2)

*Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia (PCP)*

- Commonly occurs in patients with AIDS particularly in first year of life
- Presents with cough, fever, tachypnoea and dyspnoea
- Signs include respiratory distress as there is ventilation-perfusion mismatch, reduced pulmonary compliance. Hypoxia may or may not be present.

**Table 20.2** Respiratory causes of admission to PICU with AIDS

Bacterial	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> , <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> Nosocomial: <i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> Mycobacterial: <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i>
Viral	RSV, herpes simplex, varicella zoster, influenzae, parainfluenzae, adenovirus, measles, CMV
Fungal	<i>Candida</i> , <i>aspergillus</i>
Parasite	<i>Pneumocystis carinii</i> , toxoplasma
Non-infectious	Lymphoid disease Bronchiectasis Kaposi's sarcoma

*Diagnosis*

- Pulmonary secretions usually from broncho-pulmonary lavage can result in organism
- Open lung biopsy usually has 97% success rate of identifying the organism
- Chest X-ray usually shows diffuse interstitial infiltrates
- An isolated raised serum lactate dehydrogenase level
- CD4 count is often low

*Treatment*

- High dose co-trimoxazole initially intra-venously
- High dose corticosteroids are also effective but must be sure that CMV or miliary tuberculosis do not coexist as these may worsen
- Ventilate with high PEEP and pressure-limited to reduce lung damage, allowing permissive hypercapnia
- High frequency oscillation and surfactant have helped
- Mortality has reduced to 50–60%
- But prophylaxis is still indicated

*Viral pneumonia*

- This can occur as either a respiratory infection, e.g. RSV or as part of a disseminated viral infection, e.g. measles, CMV
- CMV pneumonitis can mimic PCP but tends to have a more insidious onset and is often not diagnosed until post mortem or lung biopsy
- Bronchoalveolar lavage may demonstrate CMV present due to viral shedding
- Ganciclovir 5 mg/kg bd is often used. Side effects include bone marrow depression, GI haemorrhage, nephrotoxicity.
- Steroids may worsen the CMV infection in children with AIDS
- Ribavirin can be used for patients with RSV infection

*Mycobacterial pneumonia*

- Signs and symptoms include fever, weight loss, cough, hilar lymphadenopathy, pulmonary infiltrates and consolidation
- Can be due to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* or *M.avium-intracellulare*
- Testing by Mantoux testing
- Treatment should include isoniazid, rifampacin, pyrazinamide, streptomycin

*Lymphoid diseases*

- Occurs in 25–50% of perinatally acquired HIV
- Restrictive lung disease with hypoxia and hypocapnia
- Symptoms include cough, tachypnoea, wheezing, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, parotid enlargement
- Chest X-ray shows reticulonodular pattern and mediastinal lymphadenopathy
- May need lung biopsy for diagnosis
- Treatment is supportive and may need long-term oxygen
- Upper airway obstruction can occur due to infectious causes, e.g. laryngotracheobronchitis. Laryngoscopy or bronchoscopy may be helpful.

*Cardiovascular complications*

- Arrhythmias
- Congestive cardiac failure
- Dilated cardiomyopathy
- Endocarditis
- Diagnosis usually by echocardiography
- Treatment is symptomatic

*Renal complications*

- Acute renal failure due to complications of septic shock or due to toxic effects of drug therapy
- HIV nephropathy with severe proteinuria. A glomerulosclerosis occurs. May be associated with renal tubular acidosis.
- Other parenchymal lesions such as interstitial nephritis or haemolytic-uraemic syndrome can occur
- Treatment may involve use of dialysis and management of fluid overload

*Gastrointestinal complications*

- Malnutrition with poor absorption and diarrhoea
- Pancreatitis
- Abnormal hepatic function
- Acute abdomen can occur



**Table 20.3** Causes of neurological complications

HIV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AIDS encephalopathy</li> <li>• Corticospinal tract degeneration</li> </ul>
Opportunistic infection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CMV encephalitis</li> <li>• Cerebral toxoplasmosis</li> <li>• Candida meningitis</li> <li>• Cryptococcal meningitis</li> </ul>
Bacterial infection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> meningitis</li> <li>• Streptococcal pneumonia meningitis</li> </ul>
Cerebral vascular accidents	

*Neurological complications (Table 20.3)*

- It is important to remember that these patients can have other causes for coma than those listed above.

*Haematological complications*

- Anaemia commonly due to chronic illness, poor nutrition and GI blood loss, and to drug toxicity
- Neutropenia is common at presentation
- Thrombocytopenia may lead to bleeding

**Systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)**

Septic episodes leading to bacteraemia may trigger various host responses causing the 'sepsis syndrome'. This process can also be caused by other events such as burns, trauma and reperfusion injury. The systemic inflammatory response is the final common pathway which may lead on to multi-system organ failure (MOSF) – (Table 20.4).

A suggested model for the various events that occur are:

- Bacteria have a lipopolysaccharide in their cell wall (endotoxin)
- This binds to receptors on monocytes and macrophages
- Cytokines are released – interleukin 1 (IL-1) and tumour necrosis factor (TNF $\alpha$ )
- These cytokines effect:
  - Temperature control – (fever, hypothermia)
  - Vascular resistance and permeability (hypotension, oedema)
  - Cardiovascular function (cardiac depression)
  - Bone marrow (increased WBC)
- Some end organ effects are mediated by nitric oxide, and arachidonic acid metabolites, e.g. prostaglandins, platelet activating factor
- Complex cytokine cascade is amplified and modified. IL-8 produced locally attracts neutrophils leading to local tissue damage and organ dysfunction.

**Table 20.4** Clinical and pathophysiological manifestations of the continuum of SIRS

---

<i>Stimulation (endotoxin, trauma, etc)</i>
Release of catecholamines
Impaired cellular metabolism
Transient peripheral vasodilation
<i>Warm shock</i>
Continued cell injury
Increased capillary permeability tends to reduced intra-vascular volume
Increased cardiac output with peripheral vasodilation
Decreased tissue perfusion
<i>Cold shock</i>
Hypoxia
Hypovolaemia and hypotension
Vasoconstriction with cold peripheries
Metabolic acidosis with increased lactate
<i>Multi-system organ dysfunction/failure</i>
Heart failure
Renal failure
ARDS
DIC
Coma
Irreversible ischaemia
Death

---

- Complement, coagulation and kinin cascades are also stimulated
- Some anti-inflammatory products are also produced which try to modify this process
- Antibiotics although essential may exacerbate this process leading to more release of endotoxin

#### *Treatment*

- Antibiotics
- Surgery if this would eliminate source of infection
- Improvement of oxygen delivery
- Elimination of endotoxin (antisera)
- Mediator antagonism
- Anti-inflammatory drugs

## CHAPTER 21

## TRAUMA

**Acute head injury**

Head injury is the commonest cause of death in childhood over the age of 1. Approximately 40% of mortality in this age group involves head injury and there is considerable long-term morbidity.

*History*

Details of the injury can be obtained from parents, paramedics or witnesses once the child has been assessed fully and stabilised. Important features include:

- Length of unconsciousness
- Any evidence of seizures
- Any antecedent illness
- Is there a possibility of non-accidental injury?
  - Unconscious/encephalopathic without a cause
  - History does not explain the extent of injury
  - Bruises/other injuries not consistent with history

*Examination*

- Check and maintain airway – administer high flow oxygen.
- Stabilise cervical spine with hard neck collar.
- Cervical spine injury may be missed with potentially disastrous results until the patient is able to communicate that he or she has neck pain.
- Intubation in a head injured patient without adequate sedation may result in an increase in intra-cranial pressure. General anaesthesia with thiopentone as an induction agent helps attenuate this. The child should also be administered a muscle relaxant for the intubation in order to rapidly obtain airway protection (Table 21.1).
- Oral intubation is always first line until CT scan of the head is performed.

**Table 21.1** Indications for early intubation and ventilation

- 
- GCS of 8 and or deteriorating
  - Loss of gag/laryngeal reflexes
  - Hypoxia/hypercarbia
    - $\text{PaO}_2 < 8 \text{ kPa}$  or oxygen saturation  $< 95\%$
    - $\text{PaCO}_2 > 6 \text{ kPa}$
  - If the patient is hyperventilating and  $\text{PaCO}_2 < 3.5 \text{ kPa}$
  - Cheyne-Stokes breathing
  - Other trauma requiring intubation and ventilation, e.g. chest injury
-

- Avoid nasal intubation in basal skull fracture because of the risk of ascending infection into the cranial cavity.
- Features of basal skull fracture include:
  - periorbital haemorrhage
  - bruising behind the ears
  - blood or CSF otorrhoea or rhinorrhoea
- Maintenance of circulation is also vital as hypotension in patients with a head injury is associated with poor outcome due to reduction of cerebral perfusion pressure and the potential of secondary hypoxic injury to the brain.
- It is also important to exclude other major extracranial injury.

### Neurological examination

Initial examination of the neurological system is by using AVPU, posture and the response of the pupils to light (Table 21.2). 'P' corresponds to a Glasgow Coma Scale of 8 (Table 21.3).

**Table 21.2** The AVPU scale

A	Alert
V	Responds to voice
P	Responds to pain
U	Unresponsive
Pupils	
Posture	

**Table 21.3** Glasgow Coma Scale

	Over 5 years old		Infants under 5	
Eye opening	Spontaneous	4	Spontaneous	4
	To voice	3	To speech	3
	To pain	2	To pain	2
	None	1	None	1
Verbal	Orientated	5	Coos and babbles	5
	Confused speech	4	Irritable cries	4
	Inappropriate words	3	Cries to pain	3
	Incomprehensible sounds	2	Moans to pain	2
	None	1	None	1
	Motor	Obeys commands	6	Normal spontaneous movements
Localises pain		5	Withdraws to touch	5
Withdraws		4	Withdraws to pain	4
Abnormal flexion		3	Abnormal flexion	3
Extension		2	Abnormal extension	2
None		1	None	1

More detailed neurological examination uses the Glasgow Coma Scale. This requires modification below the age of 5.

- Check GCS every 15 min for the first hour then half hourly to evaluate progress
- Check pupil size, equality and reaction to light. Dilated pupils may indicate raised intra-cranial pressure and a unilateral dilated pupil may suggest an extra-dural or sub-dural haemorrhage.
- Focal signs
- Fundoscopy – haemorrhage may be observed
- Eye movement
- Corneal and gag reflex
- Assess posture and tone

#### *Indication of raised ICP*

- Decreased level of consciousness
- Cushing's triad – hypertension, bradycardia and apnoea
- Persistent vomiting
- Squint, III or VI nerve palsy
- Unequal or dilated pupils
- Papilloedema is rare in acute head injury
- In infants, a full fontanelle or sutural separation may be present
- Retinal or vitreous haemorrhage – associated with poor outcome

#### *Indications for cranial CT scan*

Nearly all children will need elective intubation and ventilation for the scan.

- GCS less than 12 or deteriorating
- Presence of focal neurological signs
- Persistent seizures
- Other signs of raised ICP
- Infant with unexplained encephalopathic illness or if non-accidental injury (NAI) suspected
- Consider CT or ultrasound abdomen at same time if multiple trauma to assess the possibility of intra-abdominal injury

#### *CT scan criteria for raised ICP*

- Effacement of the basal cisterns
- Thin slit-like ventricles or completely obliterated
- Cortical sulci obliterated
- Shift in the midline, herniation of temporal lobe or cerebellar tonsils

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- If CT shows any signs of extra-dural or sub-dural haemorrhage needs immediate discussion with and transfer to neurosurgical centre for possible surgery
- if in need of ventilation discuss with PICU

*Indications for admission to PICU*

- GCS of less than 10 or deteriorating
- Presence of focal neurological signs
- Persistent seizures
- Multiple trauma
- All intubated children

*Indications for ICP monitoring*

- GCS 8 or less
- Abnormal CT scan – tight brain
- Post neurosurgery
- Some patients with meningitis, encephalitis and metabolic encephalopathy may benefit from ICP monitoring
- Hypertension and abnormal posturing

May not be appropriate if patient has GCS of 3 with fixed dilated pupils.

*Methods of ICP monitoring*

- Intra-ventricular catheter
  - Gold standard placed in lateral ventricle
  - Measures direct pressure from the CSF in the ventricles
  - Accurate
  - Can be used therapeutically to remove CSF
  - May be difficult to insert
  - Risk of infection and intra-cranial bleeding
- Fibreoptic transducer
  - Reasonably accurate
  - Can be intra-parenchymal, epidural or sub-arachnoid
  - Tip of catheter is reference point therefore does not need frequent calibration
  - Easy to insert
- Epidural or sub-arachnoid catheters
  - Problems with accuracy and drift leading to a tendency to over-read
  - Easy to insert

*Indications for jugular venous bulb monitoring*

- Technique for measuring oxygen consumption of the brain leading to an assessment of the adequacy of global cerebral blood flow

- Fiberoptic probe passed retrograde from internal jugular vein to the jugular venous bulb at the base of the skull
- Normal saturations 65–70%
- Assumption has to be made about adequate delivery (haemoglobin, arterial oxygen saturation)
- Reduced levels suggest hypoperfusion, <40% implies ischaemia
- Rises suggest cerebral hyperaemia
- Cerebral lactate production can be measured
- Treatment of a falling level may indicate the need to raise CPP,  $\text{FiO}_2$  or haemoglobin

### Intra-cranial pressure

Cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) = mean arterial pressure (MAP)  
– intra-cranial pressure (ICP)

Normal ICP is less than 15 mmHg.

Causes of raised ICP are given in Table 21.4.

#### Effects of raised ICP

- Signs of raised ICP include headache, vomiting and papilloedema
- Acute raised ICP may lead to tonsillar or transtentorial herniation with signs of bradycardia, hypertension, irregular respiration and fixed and dilated pupils leading to death
- Variation in cerebral blood flow in the normal brain is autoregulated with variation in the cerebral perfusion pressure

#### Treatment

- The essentials are supportive until recovery:
  - Adequate oxygenation
  - Adequate blood flow to brain by maintaining CPP
  - Avoiding or treating fits promptly
  - Treat pain
  - Diagnose and treat intra-cranial bleeds

**Table 21.4** Causes of raised intra-cranial pressure

• Mass:	blood – haemorrhage tumour abscess
• Increased blood flow:	vasodilatation, e.g. injury, hypoxia, hypercarbia venous obstruction abnormal structure, e.g. arterio-venous malformation
• Increased CSF:	hydrocephalus
• Increased tissue:	oedema      injury around tumour metabolic or hepatic encephalopathy following resuscitation, e.g. in diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA)

Essentially treatment can be stratified depending on GCS, CT scan and ICP findings. Frequently children will be transferred and admitted to PICU following the need for anaesthesia for a CT scan for a child with a reduced GCS. Management depends on local policies but can be divided into:

- GCS 9 or above with a normal CT scan can be allowed to wake up and neurological assessment undertaken
- GCS 3 with fixed dilated pupils and an abnormal brain scan are probably brain dead and sedation is not required to enable early neurological assessment
- GCS 4–8 inclusive or those above GCS 9 with an abnormal brain scan, raised ICP or other injuries requiring ventilation should be sedated and ventilated until evidence of reduced cerebral oedema either sustained reduction in ICP or improvement on serial CT brain scans

Cerebral perfusion pressure is also affected by:

- Pain and anxiety
- Increased metabolic demand (increased temperature)
- Epileptic seizures

### Principles of head injury management

- Keep CPP above 50 mmHg if possible
- Keep PaCO<sub>2</sub> low normal – 4.5 kPa. Lower PaCO<sub>2</sub> leads to reduced cerebral blood flow and may worsen cerebral ischaemia.
- Keep patient well sedated to avoid surges of ICP with suction, coughing, straining, physiotherapy
- Consider neuro-muscular paralysis if necessary
- Keep head straight to avoid kinking of jugular veins and head up 20–30° to help reduce venous pressure (hard neck-collar may increase venous pressure)
- Relative fluid restriction to reduce intra-cerebral water, but it is important to resuscitate the child properly
- Maintain CPP by increasing mean arterial pressure through adequate resuscitation fluid and inotropes if necessary, e.g. norepinephrine
- Make sure glucose levels are maintained at normal levels as high glucose causes neurological damage and is highly likely during the early stages following injury due to the stress response – use 0.9% saline until glucose is in the normal range
- Consider prophylactic anti-convulsants

### *Treatment of raised ICP*

- Remove masses
- Hyperventilation has a temporary effect
- Osmotic diuretics – mannitol. This can however cross the blood-brain barrier and worsen cerebral oedema after the first few doses.



Maximum 1.5 g/kg in the first 24 h. A dose of 0.25–0.5 g/kg initially is indicated. Make sure the serum osmolality remains below 315 mOsm/L.

- 3% sodium chloride (5 ml/kg) is more physiological and tends to draw water out of the cerebral cells. Furosemide can also be used.
- Steroids are useful only in patients with cerebral masses particularly tumours
- Barbiturate induced coma can be considered

#### *Other therapies*

- Physiotherapy and particularly suction lead to an increase in ICP. Bolus sedation with, e.g. alfentanil is useful.
- Temperature increase leads to an increase in cerebral metabolic rate and blood flow. There is no evidence as yet that hypothermia is therapeutic but measures should be taken to avoid hyperthermia:
  - cooling (cooling blankets, ice)
  - paracetamol
  - NSAIDs, e.g. ibuprofen (if no problems with renal failure or clotting)
  - chlorpromazine IV (0.1 mg/kg slowly) – this is a very low dose and sometimes helps reduce pyrexia probably by acting centrally. However care with possible hypotension.
- Seizures are fairly common following acute head injury, the use of EEG or cerebral function monitoring is necessary particularly if the patient is paralysed. Phenytoin (18 mg/kg) loading dose may be used prophylactically.
- Consider urinary catheterisation, to monitor urine output and to prevent ICP rise due to a full bladder
- Surgery for extra-dural or sub-dural bleeds. Conservative treatment of small haemorrhages requires appropriate CT scanning if the patient deteriorates.
- Surgery can be used for bony injury, e.g. depressed skull fracture or for acute hydrocephalus
- Decompressive craniotomy may also be used. If it is used it probably needs to be used early and requires ICP monitoring to be instigated.
- Avoid hypo-osmolar state as this leads to increased cerebral oedema

#### **Non-accidental injury**

Can present in various ways which can be a problem with differential diagnosis. Needs to be considered in infants with unexplained altered level of consciousness.

- unexplained coma or fits
- unexplained trauma with healing fractures often of different ages or unusual or inconsistent with history

- isolated burns, e.g. of buttocks, scalded hands and feet, cigarette burns
- unexplained bruising

#### *Diagnosis*

- suspicion
- clinical: full fontanelle, retinal haemorrhages
- ultrasound or CT of head looking for extradural or sub-dural haematomas, skull fractures
- skeletal survey

Treatment should be symptomatic for the presenting features. Involvement of appropriate paediatricians, social services and police is important for investigating the circumstances and protecting other siblings.

#### **Thoracic trauma**

- Blunt trauma commonest
- Often quite high potential transmission of energy due to elastic chest
- High incidence of pulmonary contusion
- Airway
  - Obstruction
  - Blood
  - Gastric contents
  - Direct trauma – disruption
- Breathing
  - Pneumothorax (simple, tension, open)
  - Diaphragmatic rupture
- Circulation
  - Tamponade
  - Disruption of great vessels

#### *Treatment*

- Airway and oxygen
- Needle thoracocentesis
- Chest drain insertion
- Fluid and blood replacement
- Pericardiocentesis
- Referral to cardiothoracic centre

#### **Abdominal trauma**

- Usually due to blunt trauma
- Injuries to liver and spleen due to less protection and larger size more common than in adults

- Injury to bowel, renal tract, massive peritoneal or retroperitoneal haemorrhage can also occur
- Treatment is usually conservative following radiological imaging CT or ultrasound
- Indications for laparotomy include:
  - hypovolaemia
  - persistent haemorrhage
  - gastrointestinal perforation
  - signs of peritonism
  - increased intra-abdominal pressure
  - non-functioning kidney

### Spinal injury

- Difficulty of interpretation of X-rays. Better if lateral cervical X-ray and CT are available together. MRI gives better soft tissue views.
- Risk of spinal cord injury without obvious radiological abnormality (SCIWORA) leading to severe complications
- Keep a high index of suspicion and therefore keep cervical spine immobilised and log roll the patient with in-line stabilisation
- Lumbar spinal injuries can be caused by a lap seat belt
- Clinical examination and absence of pain in the neck with normal X-rays is the best way of ensuring clearance of the cervical spine
- However in the semi-conscious child in whom it is not clear whether the neck is clear, they may be difficult to restrain and then it is safer to let them move, keeping their neck as in-line as possible with a more comfortable collar

### Drowning

- death is due to asphyxia usually within 24 h of insult
- near drowning is survival beyond 24 h
- recovery depends on degree of hypoxic insult
- may develop hypervolaemia due to fluid absorption via gastric and pulmonary circulations leading to fluid shift from the extra-cellular space
- hypovolaemia can occur due to fluid shifts into the third space
- care with full stomach – risk of vomiting and aspiration
- hyperglycaemia or hypoglycaemia can occur
- no difference between fresh and salt water drowning

### *Pulmonary effects*

- during drowning event, hypoxia and hypercarbia develop rapidly leading to respiratory and then metabolic acidosis
- aspiration of fluid occurs leading to V/Q mismatch worsening hypoxia
- effect of water on surfactant leads to atelectasis and increased intra-pulmonary shunt

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- secondary deterioration may be due to continuing loss of surfactant, pneumonia, barotrauma, ARDS, unrecognised foreign body aspiration

*Cardiovascular effects*

- usually develop cardiogenic shock:
  - with poor cardiac contractility
  - increased capillary permeability
  - increased systemic vascular resistance

*Other effects*

- these are essential due to the hypoxic insult to the body
- renal failure
- liver dysfunction
- GI dysfunction including possible perforation
- disseminated intra-vascular coagulation (DIC)
- often develop cerebral oedema 24–48 h post event
- trauma at time of drowning, e.g. head injury

*Management*

- low threshold for intubation and ventilation
- high concentration oxygen and positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP)

*Cardiovascular*

- arrhythmias common – bradycardia, asystole (warm water); atrial or ventricular fibrillation (cold water)
- if the patient presents in ventricular fibrillation (VF) try DC shocks but may remain in VF if hypothermic especially below 30°C
- maintain cardiac output with cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (CPR) until rewarmed
- care with fluid boluses

*Hypothermia*

Rewarming should include:

- surface – heaters, warming blankets
- core – humidified gases, warmed IV fluids, gastric, peritoneal or rectal lavage, cardio-pulmonary bypass
- should not be declared dead until core temperature above 32°C if possible
- may have increase in metabolic acidosis when peripheral perfusion improves

*Predictive variables*

- not completely diagnostic but poor outcome more likely if:
  - no heart rate on arrival at hospital
  - submersion more than 10 min in non-icy water with more than 25 min of CPR
  - need for cardiac drugs during resuscitation

better outcome is likely if:

- submersion of 5 min or less with less than 10 min of CPR
- sinus rhythm, reactive pupils and response at scene

*Treatment*

Aim to minimise cerebral damage by:

- rapid restoration of oxygenation and circulation
- correction of metabolic and electrolyte abnormalities
- maintenance of normal temperature and blood glucose
- control seizures
- control raised ICP

Therapies are aimed to keep ICP under control:

- sedate and paralyse
- avoid noxious stimuli causing raised ICP
- elevate head to 20–30°
- ventilate to PaCO<sub>2</sub> of about 4.5 kPa
- avoid fluid overload
- diuretics – mannitol/furosemide

*Assessment of neurological function*

- CT scan – abnormal within 36 h is associated with poor prognosis
- EEG – demonstrating signs compatible with hypoxic brain damage
- Clinical examination after cessation of sedatives

**Burns**

- serious burns requiring PICU are few <100 per year in the UK
- severe burns are defined as >15% surface area
  - or a full-thickness of greater 5%
  - or smoke inhalation
  - or carbon monoxide poisoning
- remember other possible trauma, e.g. in explosions

*Initial care*

- Assess airway
- Stop burning process
- Begin fluid resuscitation

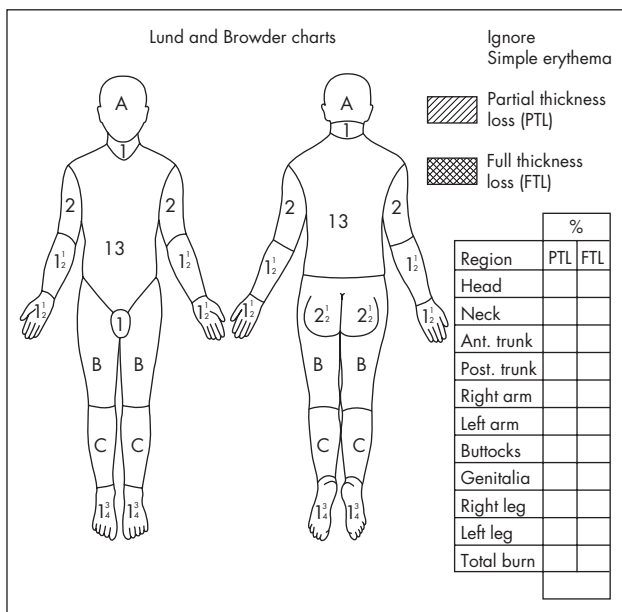


Figure 21.1 Lund and Browder charts.

Table 21.5 Surface area of head and legs with age (%)

	Age in years				
	0	1	5	10	15
A = half head	9.5	8.5	6.5	5.5	4.5
B = half thigh	2.75	3.25	4.0	4.5	4.5
C = half lower leg	2.5	2.5	2.75	3.0	3.25

## Assessment of the burn

### Surface area

- estimated using burn charts
- surface area of head and legs vary with age
- palm and adducted fingers form 1% of the body surface area
- the rule of nines does not apply until about 14 years of age

Assessment of the burn area is by use of the Lund + Browder chart (see Figure 21.1). The relative size of the head and legs varies with age and this is demonstrated in Table 21.5.

**Table 21.6** Reasons for intubation in burns include

- 
- CNS depression
  - airway burns/facial burns
  - inhalational injury
  - pneumonia or sepsis
  - surgery
- 

*Depth*

- superficial burns are an injury to the epidermis causing redness but no blisters
- partial-thickness burns cause some damage to the dermis. The skin is usually pink or mottled with blisters. These areas are very painful.
- full-thickness burns damage both the epidermis and dermis and may cause injury to deeper structures. The skin appears white, charred and leathery and is usually painless.
- may need to give an elective general anaesthetic with rapid sequence induction (Table 21.6).
- if thermal injury to airway, oedema will develop quickly and early intubation may be life saving. May be a difficult intubation due to the airway oedema.
- care with use of suxamethonium. From 2 days after injury, cells are more likely to release potassium after suxamethonium is given leading to hyperkalaemia causing arrhythmias.

*Fluid management*

- patients require fluids for:
  - resuscitation
  - normal maintenance
  - burn area
- insert a central venous line to assess intra-vascular volume
- aim to keep good urine output – catheterise and keep flow of at least 0.5–1 ml/kg/h
- diuretics only necessary in some cases of soft tissue or electrical injury to help prevent myoglobin associated renal failure
- fluid required is
  - maintenance as crystalloid
  - colloid as crystalloid at 4 ml/kg/% burn
  - half in first 8 h from time of burn
  - rest in next 16 h
- reassess electrolytes, fluid status regularly
- additional boluses 20 ml/kg for resuscitation
- alternatively crystalloid can be used for resuscitation

*Blood tests*

- FBC, U&E, cross-match
- arterial blood gas measurements for acid-base, carboxyhaemoglobin and cyanide levels

*Analgesia*

- adequate analgesia by opiate infusion
- check that distress is not due to hypoxia
- initial wound care with cling film
- check limbs for circumferential burns and the need for surgical escharotomies

*General principles of ICU management of burns*

- sterility to avoid infections
- appropriate surgical intervention with skin grafting, the earlier the better
- nutrition – enteral route preferred
  - early commencement ideally within 4 h
  - increase in calories given, dependent on surface area of burn
- psychological aspects of burn to patient and family need addressing

*Smoke inhalation*

- causes considerable number of deaths by:
  - causing thermal injury
  - carbon monoxide poisoning
  - cyanide poisoning
  - pulmonary injury
  - hypoxia
- hypoxia worsens mental function and ability to escape fire

*Carbon monoxide*

- carbon monoxide is rapidly taken up in the lungs of children to combine with haemoglobin to form carboxyhaemoglobin
- carboxyhaemoglobin needs to be measured but smoke inhalation cannot be ruled out even if the level is normal
- normal pulse oximeter readings can occur due to absorption of light by carboxyhaemoglobin although the content of oxygen in the blood is reduced
- causes many different effects on organ systems including arrhythmias, pulmonary oedema
- classically, as the percentage of carbon monoxide increases there is:
  - increasing shortness of breath
  - increasing headache and fatigue



- increasing confusion leading to coma and death
- cutaneous dilatation

### *Treatment*

- Oxygen reduces the half life of carbon monoxide from 5 to 6 h in air to one and a half hours in 100%
- Hyperbaric oxygen should be considered as this speeds up this process
- Intubation and ventilation if appropriate
- Severe acidosis is generally a poor prognostic sign

### *Cyanide poisoning*

- usually combined with carbon monoxide poisoning
- difficult to measure levels rapidly
- signs include headache, dizziness, nausea and vomiting, tachypnoea leading to shock, coma and respiratory arrest

Treatment with amyl nitrite inhalation (0.3 ml); 3% sodium nitrite 0.2–0.4 ml/kg IV over 3 min and sodium thiosulphate 25% solution 1.6 ml/kg IV over 10 min.

### *Lung injury*

- mucosal oedema and sloughing
- increased lung permeability
- increased lung water
- ciliary function decreased
- altered surfactant production

### *Clinical features*

- bronchospasm
- atelectasis and consolidation leading to pneumonia
- pulmonary oedema

### *Treatment*

- oxygen
- ventilation
- pulmonary toilet to remove soot and plugs of secretions
- antibiotics for infection, often *Staphylococcus* early, *Pseudomonas* later

### **Electrocution**

- deep burn through tissues
- entry and exit wounds
- cardiac arrest common
- ventricular fibrillation precipitated by current through heart
- primary respiratory arrest or asphyxiation due to chest wall tetany

- loss of consciousness or seizures
- acute renal failure due to myoglobin or direct electrical injury
- haemorrhage and thrombosis

*Treatment*

- cardio-pulmonary resuscitation
- fluid to maintain good urine output, often requiring more than expected for the surface burn area
- fasciotomy of damaged area

## CHAPTER 22

## POISONING

- Accidental ingestion in children account for 80–90% of admissions
- In teenagers, suicide attempts or overdose of recreational drugs is more likely
- Table 22.1 lists the commonest agents ingested

*History*

- consider poisoning in any unexplained illness of sudden onset
- evidence of taking – observed, empty bottles
- maximum dose
- time since dose
- route of administration
- history before presentation to hospital
- family drug history
- symptoms may fall into a toxidrome (Table 22.2)

*Management*

- Mainly supportive as appropriate (ABC)
  - intubate and ventilate
  - fluids
  - monitoring

**Table 22.1** Common causative agents of poisoning in children (from Woolf A et al. Poisoning and the critically ill child. In: Rogers MC and Helfaer MA. Handbook of Pediatric Intensive Care 3rd edn. Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, 1999)

---

Anti-arrhythmics	Alcohol
Anti-convulsants	Ethylene glycol
Anti-histamines	Caustics
Anti-hypertensives	Glue
Aminophylline	Herbicides
Aspirin	Organophosphates
$\beta$ blockers	Pesticides
Calcium channel blockers	Petroleum
Digoxin	
Hallucinogens	
Iron	
Opioids	
Oral hypoglycaemic agents	
Paracetamol	
Tricyclic anti-depressants	

---

**Table 22.2** Toxidromes (from Mofenson HC, Greensher J. The unknown poison. Reproduced with permission from Pediatrics, Vol 54, 336–42, 1974)

Drug involved	Clinical manifestations
<i>Anti-cholinergics</i> (atropine, scopolamine, tricyclic anti-depressants, phenothiazines, anti-histamines, mushrooms)	Agitation, hallucinations, coma, extrapyramidal movements, mydriasis, flushed, warm dry skin, dry mouth, tachycardia, arrhythmias, hypotension, hypertension, decreased bowel sounds, urinary retention
<i>Cholinergics</i> (organophosphates and carbamate insecticides)	Salivation, lacrimation, urination, defaecation, nausea, and vomiting, sweating, miosis, bronchorrhea, rales and wheezes, weakness, paralysis, confusion and coma, muscle fasciculations
<i>Opiates</i>	Slow respiration, bradycardia, hypotension, hypothermia, coma, miosis, pulmonary oedema, seizures
<i>Sedative/hypnotics</i>	Coma, hypothermia, central nervous system depression, slow respiration, hypotension, tachycardia
<i>Tricyclic anti-depressants</i>	Coma, convulsions, arrhythmias, anti-cholinergic manifestations
<i>Salicylates</i>	Vomiting, hyperpnoea, fever, lethargy, coma
<i>Phenothiazines</i>	Hypotension, tachycardia, torsion of head and neck, oculogyric crisis, trismus, ataxia, anti-cholinergic manifestations
<i>Sympathomimetics</i> (amphetamines, phenylpropanolamine, ephedrine, caffeine, cocaine, and aminophylline)	Tachycardia, arrhythmias, psychosis, hallucinations, delirium, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, piloerection
<i>Alcohols, Glycols</i> (methanol, ethylene glycol) also Salicylates, Paraldehyde, Iron, Isoniazid, Phenformin	Elevated anion gap metabolic acidosis

*Reduce exposure*

Methods depend on:

- patient's age
- substances ingested
- time since ingestion
- there is no place for emetics in children
- gastric lavage
  - often needs general anaesthetic to protect airway
  - useful for recent ingestion
  - avoid if corrosive substances ingested

- activated charcoal may be useful up to 24 h after ingestion particularly if slow release preparations taken or if drugs which are slowly absorbed have been ingested. Repeated doses may help reduce absorption in drugs which have entero-hepatic circulation.
- cathartics – reduce absorption by decreasing transit time
- whole bowel irrigation by isotonic polyethylene glycol electrolyte solutions can be used for drugs not absorbed by activated charcoal but have a long transit time (e.g. iron) treatment at 30 ml/kg/h should continue until the diarrhoea induced becomes clear fluid
- surgery, e.g. to remove cocaine/morphine packets

#### *Increase elimination*

- diuresis with or without alkalinisation by sodium bicarbonate is used for salicylate poisoning and other weak acids. Maintain a pH >6.0.
- haemodialysis – most useful for small molecular weight drugs with a small volume of distribution and poor protein binding, e.g. salicylates, lithium
- charcoal haemoperfusion can absorb polar and non-polar drugs such as barbiturates and digoxin
- haemofiltration can help remove large compounds, e.g. aminoglycoside or theophylline. It can also be useful with iron or lithium.
- exchange transfusion may be useful if methaemoglobinaemia has been caused

#### *Investigations*

- routine bloods including electrolytes
- paracetamol and salicylate levels will give an indication of amounts taken and help with treatment options
- gastric washouts should be sent for analysis
- urine toxicology should be analysed

#### *Corrosive liquid ingestion*

- alkalis tend to cause more damage than acids
- liquids cause more scars than solids
- batteries or other solids stuck in the oesophagus cause most damage
- treatment is symptomatic
- neutralisation not recommended
- no evidence of steroids being useful
- long-term scarring may occur

#### *Specific treatments*

- Benzodiazepines – flumazenil
- Opiates – naloxone

- Paracetamol
  - N-acetylcysteine
  - may be useful beyond first 24 h
  - monitoring of prothrombin time and liver function tests necessary
- Iron
  - desferrioxamine
  - whole bowel irrigation
- Tricyclic anti-depressants
  - monitoring for arrhythmias
  - sodium bicarbonate 8.4% 1 ml/kg bolus repeated to keep pH 7.45–7.55
  - activated charcoal may help reduce absorption

### Recreational drugs

#### *Cocaine*

- cocaine overdose leads to hallucinations, agitation, convulsions, hypertension, myocardial ischaemia, cerebral infarction and particularly cardiac arrhythmias
- use activated charcoal if ingestion within 1 h
- benzodiazepines are useful for agitation and convulsions
- calcium antagonists may be useful for resistant arrhythmias
- treat acidosis as this exacerbates arrhythmias

#### *Ecstasy*

- amphetamine derivative producing euphoria, stimulation and mood alteration
- produces idiosyncratic reactions including coma, convulsions, arrhythmias, malignant hyperthermia, rhabdomyolysis, hypertension and multi-organ failure; can mimic febrile convulsions
- activated charcoal may be useful if within 1 h of ingestion
- blood levels can be measured to determine consumption
- signs of cardiac or neurological toxicity require intensive care and monitoring
- hyperthermia may respond to cooling measures or require dantrolene 1 mg/kg over 10–15 min repeated up to a maximum of 10 mg/kg in 24 h
- labetalol can be used for hypertension and benzodiazepines for sedation
- fluid management can be problematical. Water intoxication can have occurred at presentation, but the patient may be dehydrated and a diuresis may be required to clear myoglobin.

#### *LSD – lysergic acid diethylamide*

- 5-HT agonist causing hallucination
- rapid absorption and duration of action

- symptomatic treatment is indicated as required, avoid phenothiazides

**Further information**

Drug toxicity information is available at:

National Poisons Information Service

TOXBASE on the internet at [www.spib.axl.co.uk/toxbase/](http://www.spib.axl.co.uk/toxbase/)

National telephone number at 0870 600 6266

## CHAPTER 23

### NEONATAL AND OTHER SURGICAL PATIENTS IN PICU

In addition to the problems of neonates and post-operative major surgery the following conditions have specific potential problems.

#### **Congenital diaphragmatic hernia**

- incidence of 1 in 4000 live births
- problem is reduction of lung tissue with abdominal contents within the thoracic cavity. A nasogastric tube may reduce ventilation compromise.
- poorly formed diaphragm usually on left. Associated with malrotation of the gut. 25% have associated cardiovascular anomalies.
- main problem is persistent pulmonary hypertension
- repair is not urgent
- needs to be stable for 24 h pre-operatively
- mortality 40–50% of live births which has not changed significantly over the last 30 years
- hypoxia may be persistent

#### *Ventilation*

- conventional ventilation needs to be fast (60 bpm) with small tidal volume. High frequency oscillation is probably more advantageous.
- may not be able to reduce PaCO<sub>2</sub> to normal
- weaning may be prolonged

#### **Tracheo-oesophageal fistula**

- occurs approximately in 1 out of 4500 live births
- associated with other anomalies
- major problem pre-operatively is ventilation through the fistula leading to distension of the stomach, splinting of the diaphragm and reduction in effective ventilation
- post-operatively may need ventilating to allow healing of the surgical anastomosis of the oesophagus. Some surgeons like about 5 days for a tight repair.
- H-type fistulas may be a cause of recurrent chest infections in infancy

#### **Gastroschisis/exomphalus**

- problem is the compression of abdominal contents back into the small abdomen, creating diaphragmatic splinting and requiring post-operative ventilation



- may need to replace the abdominal contents over some days using gortex patch to protect the bowel
- risk of moderate to large losses of serous fluid
- risk of temperature loss

### Spinal surgery

Patients undergoing spinal surgery have a number of potential problems:

- restrictive lung defect leading to requirement for ventilation post-operatively
- poor cough
- other major neurological or neuro-muscular co-morbidity
- major surgery requiring:
  - post-operative analgesia
  - major peri-operative blood loss
  - potential neurological damage to spinal cord
- monitoring of neurological function in the legs is required
- care with blood loss especially on release of the clamps of the drainage bottles

### Neurosurgery

- commonly post trauma, tumour surgery
- principles when ventilated are:
  - to maintain low normal  $\text{PaCO}_2$  (c. 4.5 kPa)
  - keep head up tilt moderately at  $10-20^\circ$
  - keep head straight to avoid increased venous pressure from kinked jugular veins
  - avoid fall in cerebral perfusion pressure by preventing ICP rise and hypotension
  - good sedation and analgesia
  - avoid physiotherapy and suction as much as possible
- particular problems after posterior fossa surgery include:
  - loss of gag reflex leading to possibility of aspiration
  - neurogenic pulmonary oedema
  - cerebral haemorrhage
  - hydrocephalus
  - consider problems with analgesia especially the effect of morphine on conscious level
- need for steroids
- increased incidence of epilepsy

---

## Section 3

# Drugs Used in Paediatric Intensive Care

---

## DRUGS USED IN PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### **Aciclovir**

A purine nucleoside analogue

#### *Use*

- Anti-viral agent for treatment of Herpes infections

#### *Dose*

<3 months 10 mg/kg tds

3 months–12 years 250 mg/m<sup>2</sup> tds

>12 years 12 mg/kg tds

Double dose in severe infections over 3 months

Reduce dose frequency in renal failure

#### *Side effects*

Phlebitis and local inflammation at site of injection

Polyuric renal failure (reversible)

Increased risk of renal failure with other nephrotoxic drugs

CNS toxicity (tremors, confusion and fits)

### **Adenosine**

Endogenous nucleoside which slows atrioventricular (AV) node conduction and prolongs PR interval

#### *Uses*

- Supraventricular tachycardia termination (not atrial flutter or AF)
- Diagnosis of a broad complex tachycardia

#### *Dose*

50 µg/kg IV rapidly with flush

Increase in increments of 50 µg/kg every 2 min

Max 300 µg/kg <1 month

500 µg/kg >1 month

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

2nd or 3rd degree heart block, sick sinus syndrome

Atrial flutter or fibrillation

#### *Side effects*

Flushing, dyspnoea, chest pain, bronchospasm

### **Alfentanil**

Short acting opioid 5–10 min

#### *Use*

- Analgesia particularly for short procedures or as adjunct

#### *Dose*

5–50  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$  bolus

0.5–1  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}/\text{min}$  infusion

#### *Side effects*

Respiratory depression if not ventilated

Transient fall in blood pressure and heart rate after administration

Nausea and vomiting

Increased length of action in hepatic failure

### **Aminophylline**

Theophylline salt

#### *Uses*

- Bronchodilator
- Respiratory stimulant in babies with apnoeas
- Diuretic, useful with severe respiratory distress

#### *Dose*

Bronchodilator:

Loading dose 5 mg/kg IV over 20–30 min

250–500 mg over 12 years

Omit if on theophylline preparations

Infusion 1 mg/kg/h or 0.5 mg/kg/h over 12 years

Diuretic: 2–4 mg/kg synergistic effect if given 30 min before furosemide can be given as IV infusion

#### *Contra-indications*

Omit loading dose if on oral theophylline

Clearance reduces with reduced cardiac or hepatic function

Increased levels with cimetidine, erythromycin, ciprofloxacin

Decreased levels with rifampicin, carbamazepine, phenobarbitone, phenytoin

Increased risk of hypokalaemia with salbutamol

#### *Side effects*

Tachycardia, arrhythmias, convulsions, headache, decreased gastric emptying with increased risk of vomiting and reflux, hyperglycaemia

Monitor levels 10–20 mg/l (55–110 mmol/l)

### **Amiodarone**

Anti-arrhythmic which prolongs the action potential in atrium and ventricle

#### *Use*

- Ventricular and supraventricular arrhythmias. Causes little myocardial depression.

#### *Dose*

5 mg/kg po/IV max 200 mg. Initially given bd for 7–10 days as loading dose then od for maintenance.

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Thyroid dysfunction (contains iodine)

Sinus bradycardia or heart block

Circulatory collapse

Interactions with  $\beta$  blockers and calcium channel antagonists

Potentiates digoxin, warfarin, theophylline, phenytoin

#### *Side effects – acute*

Anaphylactic shock (rapid IV boluses)

Skin reactions

Nightmares

Corneal deposits (reversible) requires monitoring

#### *Long-term*

Pulmonary fibrosis, pneumonitis, alveolitis (reversible)

Raised liver function tests

Hypo or hyperthyroidism

Peripheral neuropathy, myopathy and cerebellar dysfunction (reversible)

Hepatitis leading to cirrhosis (rare)

### **Amitriptyline**

Tricyclic anti-depressant with sedative properties

#### *Use*

- Depression, neuralgic pain

#### *Dose*

25 mg bd/tds or 75 mg nocte max 150 mg over 12 years old

Start low and titrate

Takes some time to reach therapeutic levels

#### *Side effects*

Sedation

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

Anti-cholinergic, e.g. dry mouth, cardiac dysrhythmias, sweating  
Hyponatraemia

### *Interactions*

Plasma concentration reduced by some anti-convulsants  
Increased by phenothiazines, cimetidine

## **Amoxycillin**

Broad spectrum penicillin

### *Uses*

- active against gram-positive and some gram-negative bacteria
- inactivated by  $\beta$ -lactamases

### *Dose*

30 mg/kg IV tds (dose may be doubled in severe infection)  
50 mg/kg IV bd-qds in neonates depending on age  
Maximum dose 4 g daily

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Allergy  
Renal failure reduce frequency of administration  
Prolongs prothrombin time with warfarin  
Removed by haemodialysis/peritoneal dialysis

### *Side effects*

Gastrointestinal – nausea, diarrhoea  
Urticarial or maculo-papular rash especially with glandular fever

## **Amphotericin**

Polyene antifungal

### *Use*

- Fungal infections including candida and aspergillus

### *Dose*

Test dose recommended

Conventional	250 $\mu$ g/kg increasing by 250 $\mu$ g/kg/day to 1 mg/kg od IV 250 $\mu$ g/kg for neonates
Liposomal	1 mg/kg increasing by 1 mg/kg/day to 3 mg/kg od IV for all children 5 mg/kg od for proven systemic infection



### *Contra-indications/warnings*

#### Hypersensitivity

Renal impairment – reduce dose or stop if serum creatinine twice normal

Low serum potassium, magnesium and phosphate can occur

#### *Side effects*

- Acute infusion reactions such as fever, nausea, vomiting, headache, muscle and joint pains. Usually most severe and frequent with first dose. Thus use of test dose which can be covered by hydrocortisone.
- Nephrotoxicity occurs in >85% with abnormal electrolytes including hypokalaemia and raised urea and creatinine. Usually reversible.
- Nephrotoxicity and acute infusion reactions are much less common with liposomal amphotericin but still occur
- Arrhythmias, bronchospasm, haematological, rashes, increased LFT's, GI haemorrhage, gastroenteritis, diarrhoea, confusion, encephalopathy, peripheral neuropathy can also occur

### **Atracurium**

Non-depolarising neuro-muscular blocker which is broken down by Hofmann degradation which is dependent on pH and temperature and by ester hydrolysis

#### *Use*

- Muscle relaxation

#### *Dose*

0.5–0.6 mg/kg bolus

0.1–0.4 mg/kg/h infusion

#### *Side effects*

Bradycardia, hypotension

Histamine release

Drug may degrade in the warm atmosphere of PICU

Increased action of metabolite, laudosine in renal and hepatic failure

### **Atropine**

Muscarinic acetylcholine antagonist

#### *Uses*

- Sinus bradycardia
- Reversal of muscarinic effects of anticholinesterases
- Organophosphate poisoning
- Drying agent

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### *Dose*

15–20 µg/kg IV max 600 µg

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Pyrexia (increased temperature due to blocking of sweat production)

Urinary retention

Additive effect with other drugs with anti-cholinergic activity, e.g. tri-cyclic anti-depressants

### *Side effects*

Tachycardia

Drowsiness, confusion

Dry mouth

Blurred vision

Atrial arrhythmias and atrioventricular dissociation

### **Azlocillin**

Broad spectrum penicillin

### *Uses*

- systemic infections, respiratory, urinary infection penicillin sensitive streptococci and staphylococci
- anaerobes including Bacteroides
- gram-negative including Pseudomonas

### *Dose*

75 mg/kg IV tds over 1 year

100 mg/kg IV tds 1 month–1 year

100 mg/kg IV bd <1 month (50 mg/kg <2.5 kg)

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Allergy

Caution with severe jaundice (competitive protein binding)

Reduce dose frequency in renal impairment

Prolongs non-depolarising neuro-muscular blockade

### *Side effects*

Gastrointestinal disturbances

Seizures

Thrombocytopenia

### **Benzylpenicillin**

Bactericidal antibiotic which interferes with bacterial cell wall synthesis

*Uses*

- meningococcal disease
- neonatal sepsis with gentamicin
- pneumococcal infections

*Dose*

25 mg/kg IV qds (× 2–3/day in neonates)

50 mg/kg IV qds or × 6/day in severe infections, e.g. meningitis

*Side effects*

Haemolytic anaemia

Transient neutropenia and thrombocytopenia

Convulsions

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Allergy (use erythromycin or clindamycin)

Anaphylaxis

Renal failure – reduce frequency of administration

**Budesonide**

Corticosteroid which decreases inflammation and bronchial hyperactivity

*Uses*

- Asthma prophylaxis
- Mild to moderate croup or post-extubation stridor
- Management of established broncho-pulmonary dysplasia

*Dose*

Asthma: Nebuliser 250 µg–1 mg bd

Up to 2 mg bd over 12

Croup: Nebuliser 2 mg–single dose

*Contra-indications*

Acute pulmonary tuberculosis

Hypersensitivity

*Side effects*

Little absorbed into plasma

Occasional mild irritation of throat and hoarseness

**Bupivacaine**

*Use*

- Local anaesthetic

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### *Dose*

Up to 2 mg/kg bolus

Epidural infusion 0.1–0.2 ml/kg/h of 0.125% solution

Max dose 2 mg/kg per 4 h period

Usually in combination with 1:200 000 epinephrine (adrenaline) for epidural

Can be combined with fentanyl 1 µg/kg

### *Side effects*

Arrhythmias, fits leading to coma

IV injection may lead to fixing of bupivacaine to myocardial tissue and subsequent cardiac arrest

### **Caffeine citrate**

CNS stimulant

### *Use*

- for central apnoea in neonates

### *Dose*

20 mg/kg po/IV loading dose

5 mg/kg od po/IV maintenance dose

### *Side effects*

Jitteriness, seizures, tachycardia

### **Calcium gluconate**

#### *Uses*

- Hypocalcaemia
- Cardiac arrest
- Massive transfusion
- Inotrope particularly in neonates and infants

### *Dose*

0.1 ml/kg of 10% solution IV bolus in cardiac arrest

0.1–0.4 ml/kg/h by infusion

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Hypercalcaemia

Calcium overload is thought to play a role in ischaemic and reperfusion cell injury

### *Side effects*

Local reactions at infusion site including extravasation

## Captopril

Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor

### Use

- hypertension, heart failure

### Dose

Commence with test dose as marked hypotension can occur especially if hypovolaemic:

Up to 1 month 10–50 µg/kg

>1 month 100 µg/kg

>12 years 6.25 mg

Maintenance 100 µg/kg–2 mg/kg tds. Titrate to lowest effective dose.

### Side effects

Hypotension, GI disturbance, hyperkalaemia, blood disorders

### Contra-indications/warnings

Avoid in neonates if possible due to risk of renal failure

Reduce dose in renal failure

Diuretics may potentiate action

NSAIDs reduce hypotensive effect

## Cephalosporins

excretion renal

3–7% with penicillin allergy also allergic to cephalosporins

## Cefotaxime

Broad spectrum bactericidal

### Uses

- meningitis
- initial treatment of severe sepsis including meningococcal disease
- epiglottitis
- respiratory and urinary tract infections

### Dose

30–50 mg/kg bd–qds (bd in neonates)

Frequency can be increased in severe infection

### Contra-indications/warnings

Allergy to penicillin/cephalosporin

Reduce dosage in renal failure to half at the same frequency

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### *Side effects*

Hypersensitivity – rashes

Haematological – can cause neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, haemolytic anaemia, rarely agranulocytosis

Transiently raised LFT's

Pseudomembranous colitis – rare

### **Ceftazidime**

#### *Uses*

- third generation cephalosporin
- acts on *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in particular
- no useful anti-staphylococcal activity

#### *Dose*

15–50 mg/kg  $\times$  2–3/day; bd in neonates

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Hypersensitivity

Reduce dose frequency in renal impairment

Care with nephrotoxic drugs (e.g. aminoglycosides, loop diuretics)

### *Side effects*

Pain on injection/phlebitis

### **Ceftriaxone**

#### *Uses*

- very similar use and contra-indications as cefotaxime
- third generation cephalosporin

#### *Dose*

20–50 mg/kg IV od maximum 4g

80 mg/kg IV od severe infections

### **Cefuroxime**

#### *Uses*

- second generation cephalosporin acts on a wide range of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria
- lower respiratory tract infections
- surgical prophylaxis

#### *Dose*

10–30 mg/kg IV tds (bd  $<$ 7 days of age)

50–60 mg/kg IV  $\times$  3–4/day for meningitis (reduce dose when improvement seen)

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Hypersensitivity

Renal failure reduce frequency. Removed by haemodialysis.

*Side effects*

overdose can lead to convulsions

gastrointestinal disturbances

**Chloral hydrate**

Sedative and hypnotic related to barbiturates

*Use*

- Sedation usually without respiratory depression. Not analgesic.

*Dose*

25–50 mg/kg po/pr for single procedures

20–30 mg/kg po/pr up to four times/day

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Caution in cardiac disease, porphyria, gastritis

Occasionally interacts with IV furosemide to cause sweating, variable blood pressure and a feeling of uneasiness

Hepatic failure may prolong sedation

*Side effects*

GI irritation

Corrosive to skin

CNS effects: ataxia

Peripheral dilatation leading to hypotension

Myocardial arrhythmias

**Cimetidine**

H<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonist

*Uses*

- Prophylaxis against upper GI bleed/perforation, stress ulceration
- Gastro-oesophageal reflux

*Dose*

5–10 mg/kg qds

5 mg/kg qds under 1 month

400 mg/dose qds over 12 months

IV infusion over 10 min

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Rapid infusion may lead to hypotension and arrhythmias

Reduce dose in renal impairment

Inhibits breakdown of drugs metabolised by cytochrome P450 – warfarin, opiates, phenytoin, theophylline, caffeine

### *Side effects*

Diarrhoea

Headache and tiredness

### **Ciprofloxacin**

A synthetic 4 quinolone antibiotic

### *Use*

- Gram-negative or gram-positive infections

### *Dose*

5 mg/kg bd. Reduce in renal failure. Monitor levels.

### *Contra-indications*

Hypersensitivity

Can reduce threshold of seizures in epilepsy

Patients with glucose-6 dehydrogenase deficiency may be prone to haemolysis

### *Interactions*

May prolong oral anti-coagulants

Reduce theophylline dose

Increased risk of nephrotoxicity with cyclosporin

### *Side effects*

GI disturbances, CNS disturbances, hypersensitivity

Transient hepatic disturbance, also reversible haematological disorders

### **Clarithromycin**

Macrolide antibiotic

### *Uses*

- Respiratory tract infection
- Otitis media

### *Dose*

7.5 mg/kg IV bd max 500 mg/dose

### *Contra-indications/warning*

Hypersensitivity

Interaction with theophylline, digoxin, warfarin, carbamazepine



### *Side effects*

Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, abdominal pain

Allergic reactions

Occasional CNS symptoms

### **Clonidine**

$\alpha_2$  adrenergic agonist. Reduces heart rate, stroke volume and systemic vascular resistance.

### *Uses*

- Sedation
- Morphine withdrawal
- Hypertension

### *Dose*

0.25–5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$  po/IV tds–qds. Need low dose to commence due to possible hypotension.

IV infusion usually 1  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}/\text{h}$  but can go upto 2  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}/\text{h}$

### *Contra-indications/warning*

Porphyria

Abrupt withdrawal can lead to rebound hypertension

### *Side effects*

Dry mouth, restlessness

### **Co-trimoxazole**

Antibiotic mixture of sulphamethoxazole and trimethoprim

### *Uses*

- *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia, toxoplasmosis, urinary tract infections

Dose 18–27 mg/kg IV bd <12 years

960 mg–1.44 g IV bd 12–18 years

For *Pneumocystis*: 60 mg/kg IV bd for 14 days then orally for 7 days

### *Contra-indications*

- history of hypersensitivity
- severe renal insufficiency

### *Side effects*

- potentiates warfarin and phenytoin
- rare: Stevens-Johnson syndrome, hepatic necrosis, agranulocytosis, aplastic anaemia
- other haematological side effects are usually reversible
- high dose: rash, fever, raised liver enzymes also can occur

## Desmopressin (DDAVP)

Vasopressin analogue

### Use

- Diabetes insipidus

### Dose

0–1 month	400 ng
1 month–2 years	400 ng–1 µg
2–12	1–2 µg
>12	2–4 µg

Single dose usually suppresses diuresis for 24h, lower doses may be effective and more gentle

### Contra-indications/warnings

Avoid water load

Care with diarrhoea and vomiting

May cause hyponatraemia and convulsions

May interact with tricyclic anti-depressants, chlorpromazine

## Dexamethasone

Systemic corticosteroid

### Uses

- Improve lung function in broncho-pulmonary dysplasia
- In leukaemia protocols
- Headache with raised intra-cranial pressure
- To reduce oedema around cerebral tumours
- Croup and post-extubation stridor
- Adrenocortical disease
- *Haemophilus meningitis* (may be useful in other causes of meningitis)

### Dose

BPD: 500 µg/kg od for 7 days

250 µg/kg bd for 3 days

Post-extubation stridor 200 µg/kg three doses IV 8 hourly start at least 24 h pre-extubation

Croup 150 µg/kg bd

Headache and raised ICP 250 µg/kg 5 days then reduce

### Contra-indications/warnings

Suppresses adrenal for 3–4 weeks after 10 day course

Risk of nephrocalcinosis if on diuretics

May cause hyperglycaemia, muscle weakness, GI haemorrhage, impaired wound healing particularly with prolonged use

*Interactions*

- Reduced effect with phenobarbitone, phenytoin, rifampicin, carbamazepine
- Antagonises anti-hypertensives and diuretics

**Diazepam**

Benzodiazepine

*Uses*

- Sedation
- Anti-convulsant
- Muscle spasms

*Dose*

0.2 mg/kg bolus IV

0.2–0.5 mg/kg po/pr 8–12 hourly

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Avoid in neonates as the organic solvents in the intra-venous preparation (propylene glycol and sodium benzoate) are dangerous

Hepatic and renal failure may lead to prolonged effect

*Side effects*

Pain on injection, thrombophlebitis

Respiratory depression and apnoea

Drowsiness

Hypotension and bradycardia

**Diclofenac**

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory analgesic

*Uses*

- Pain especially musculoskeletal. Has a morphine sparing effect.
- Anti-pyretic

*Dose*

1 mg/kg tds po/pr max 150 mg/24 h

Can be used by slow IV injection not IM

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Renal failure

Asthma (especially severe)

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

GI bleeding or clotting disorders

Hypersensitivity

Not recommended less than 6 months of age

### *Side effects*

Prolongs bleeding time (effect on platelets)

Gastric ulceration, nausea

Acute renal failure particularly if septic, previous poor renal function, hypovolaemia, hypotension

### **Digoxin**

Cardiac glycoside which inhibits Na/K ATPase

### *Uses*

- Supraventricular tachycardia especially by slowing A-V conduction in atrial defibrillation or flutter reducing the ventricular rate. Also positive inotropic effect.
- Congestive cardiac failure

### *Dose*

Age	Digitalisation	Maintenance (given as divided dose)
Premature	20 µg/kg po	5 µg/kg po
Term	30 µg/kg po	8–10 µg/kg po
Child	30–40 µg/kg po	8–12 µg/kg po
>10 years	1500 µg po	125–750 µg po

Digitalisation involves half the dose, then one quarter of the dose 6 h later and the rest 6 h later

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Complete heart block, in over 2 year olds with an accessory pathway

Reduced doses in renal impairment

Hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia and hypercalcaemia may predispose to toxicity

These are potentiated by diuretics, corticosteroids, amphotericin, salbutamol

Plasma concentration of digoxin is increased by anti-arrhythmics including amiodarone, verapamil, diltiazem and also by erythromycin, spironolactone

### *Side effects*

Arrhythmias including heart block

Nausea, vomiting, anorexia, diarrhoea

Fatigue, confusion, hallucinations

Visual disturbances, headache

### **Dobutamine**

A  $\beta_1$  agonist that increases heart rate and myocardial contractility. Has mild  $\beta_2$  and  $\alpha_1$  effects reducing peripheral vascular resistance.

#### *Uses*

- shock
- sepsis
- cardiomyopathy

#### *Dose*

0–20  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}/\text{min}$

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

- severe hypotension
- obstruction to left ventricular filling or emptying (e.g. subaortic stenosis)
- care when infusing peripherally (dilute)
- ideally infused via central catheter

#### *Side effects*

Tachycardia

Dysrhythmias

Nausea, vomiting, hypersensitivity

Tolerance may occur after 72 h

### **Dopamine**

Endogenous catecholamine mainly acting at  $\beta_1$  and dopaminergic adrenoceptors

Noradrenaline precursor which also releases noradrenaline from synapses

#### *Uses*

Inotrope for shock (sepsis)

- low dose (1–5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}/\text{min}$ ) may increase renal blood flow and urine output
- higher dose causes vasoconstriction

#### *Dose*

IV infusion of 1–20  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}/\text{min}$

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

- ventricular tachycardia or other tachyarrhythmias
- phaeochromocytoma
- extravasation may cause tissue irritation and necrosis

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- variable metabolism means that plasma levels have little relation to infusion rates
- may worsen renal function in a hypovolaemic patient
- interferes with prolactin secretion

### *Side effects*

Tachycardia

Ventricular arrhythmias

Vasoconstriction

Gut ischaemia

### **Dopexamine**

Predominately  $\beta_2$  stimulating properties

Inodilator with dopaminergic properties

### *Use*

- patients requiring inotropy and peripheral vasodilation, e.g. heart failure

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy

Aortic stenosis

Phaeochromocytoma

Thrombocytopenia may be worsened

### *Dose*

0.5–6  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}/\text{min}$

### *Side effects*

Tachycardia

Hypotension

Hypokalaemia

Hyperglycaemia

### **Enoximone**

Phosphodiesterase inhibitor

### *Use*

- inotropy with peripheral vasodilation, e.g. in heart failure

### *Dose*

Loading dose 0.5 mg/kg over 1 h

Infusion 5–20  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}/\text{min}$ . No need to wean as it has long half life.

*Contra-indications/warning*

Reduce dose in hepatic or renal failure

Inhibits platelet aggregation

*Side effects*

Hypotension (especially in septic shock)

Arrhythmias

**Epinephrine (Adrenaline)**

Direct-acting sympathomimetic activity on  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  adrenoceptors

*Uses*

- cardiac arrest
- anaphylaxis
- inotrope for sepsis
- croup

*Dose*

- cardiac arrest – 10  $\mu\text{g/kg}$  IV (100  $\mu\text{g/kg}$  via ETT) 0.1 ml/kg of 1:10 000
- anaphylaxis – IM 0.5–6 years 0.12 ml of 1:1000  
6–12 years 0.25 ml of 1:1000
- inotrope 0–2  $\mu\text{g/kg/min}$  via central catheter (may need more)
- nebuliser 0.5 ml/kg up to 5 ml of 1:1000 3 hourly PRN

*Contra-indications/warnings*

- may cause hyperglycaemia, tachycardia, tremor
- may cause tissue necrosis if extravasation occurs

**Epoprostenol (Prostacyclin)**

Prostaglandin which inhibits platelets and is a pulmonary vasodilator

*Uses*

- Pulmonary vasodilator (inhaled)
- Anti-coagulant (inhibits platelets)
- Digital ischaemia

*Dose*

IV infusion 2–20 ng/kg/min (via central line on a separate lumen)

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Hypovolaemia

Potentiates other anti-coagulants

*Side effects*

Flushing, headaches, hypotension, bradycardia, nausea, convulsions

## **Erythromycin**

Macrolide antibiotic

### *Uses*

- penicillin allergic patients
- active against *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, Group A & B streptococci, *Mycoplasma* and other atypical pneumonias
- whooping cough. Reduces length of infectivity
- low dose acts as a prokinetic

### *Dose*

12.5 mg/kg qds (tds in neonates)

Dose can be doubled in severe infection

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Increases serum concentrations of digoxin, warfarin, phenytoin, theophylline, midazolam, alfentanil

### *Side effects*

Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, allergy, reversible hearing loss

## **Fentanyl**

Synthetic opioid analgesic – duration of bolus 20 min

### *Use*

- Analgesia

### *Dose*

1–3 µg/kg IV bolus

5–10 µg/kg IV bolus if ventilated

7–10 µg/kg IV bolus to obtund laryngoscopy and intubation

50–100 µg/kg IV bolus for cardiac surgery

1–5 µg/kg/min for sedation

0.5–1 µg/kg/h in epidural with bupivacaine

### *Side effects*

Nausea, constipation, respiratory depression, hypotension, bradycardia

Chest wall rigidity

Enhanced effect in hepatic failure

## **Flucloxacillin**

Antibacterial penicillin

### *Use*

- Gram-positive especially Staphylococcal infections including cellulitis, endocarditis, pneumonia



*Dose*

12.5–25 mg/kg IV qds (double dose in severe infection)

Reduce frequency in neonates and renal failure

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Allergy

Prolongs prothrombin time with warfarin

*Side effects*

Gastrointestinal effects

Skin rash

Hepatitis/cholestatic jaundice

**Fluconazole**

Triazole antifungal

*Uses*

- Treatment of fungal infections. Some candida and cryptococcal strains are resistant
- Prophylaxis

*Dose*

6–12 mg/kg IV/oral od for systemic infection max 400 mg/day

3–12 mg/kg in immunocompromised patients

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Renal/hepatic impairment

May increase concentrations of warfarin, phenytoin, theophylline and midazolam

Should not be used with cisapride or terfenadine as increased levels may lead to arrhythmias

*Side effects*

Rash, pruritis

Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea

Raised liver enzymes (more exaggerated in malignancies or HIV)

Hypersensitivity

**Flumazenil**

Competitive antagonist to benzodiazepines with short duration of action

*Uses*

- Benzodiazepine overdose
- Test to diagnose cause of prolonged sedation

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### *Dose*

10 µg/kg IV repeated up to a max 40 µg/kg

Infusion 2–10 µg/kg/h

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Raised ICP

Epilepsy

Tricyclic anti-depressant overdose – may lead to fits and cardiac arrest

Much shorter duration of action than benzodiazepines

### *Side effects*

Dizziness, agitation, fits

Arrhythmias, hypertension

Nausea and vomiting

## **Furosemide (Frusemide)**

Loop diuretic

### *Use*

- diuretic for fluid overload, cardiac or renal failure

### *Dose*

IV 0.5–1 mg/kg od–qds

IV infusion 100 µg–4 mg/kg/h

Suggested start at 100 µg/kg and double every 2 h until urine output more than 1 ml/kg/h

Higher doses may be required in renal or hepatic failure

Oral doses approximately double IV dose

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

- anuria
- hypokalaemia
- correct hypotension before administration
- precomatose states associated with liver failure
- hypersensitivity
- occasional GI disturbances

### *Interactions*

- may include dysrhythmias in patients on digoxin due to hypokalaemia
- hypotension may occur with ACE inhibitors
- increased risk of ototoxicity with aminoglycosides

### *Side effects*

- electrolyte disturbances: hypokalaemia, hyponatraemia, hypocalcaemia, hypomagnesaemia

- ototoxicity, skin rashes, headache
- acute pancreatitis, bone marrow depression (rare)

### **Gentamicin**

Aminoglycoside antibiotic

#### *Uses*

- Septicaemia, bacteraemia, chest infections, neonatal infections
- Intra-theal for CNS infections

#### *Dose*

2.5 mg/kg tds	<12 years
1–2 mg/kg tds	>12 years +
single dose regime	6 mg/kg <12 years
	4–5 mg/kg >12 years

Much reduced in frequency less than 1 month of age

Measurement of trough and peak levels

#### *Contra-indications*

Hypersensitivity

Myasthenia gravis

Keep well hydrated and measure renal function

#### *Interactions*

Increased risk of oto and nephrotoxicity with cephalosporins, vancomycin, cyclosporin, furosemide, amphotericin

Enhances non-depolarising muscle relaxants

#### *Side effects*

Nephrotoxicity. Reduced with once daily dosage.

Ototoxicity

### **Glyceryl trinitrate**

Vasodilator by relaxation of vascular smooth muscle tending to act more on venous than arterial side of the circulation

#### *Uses*

- Hypertension
- Increases cardiac output and reduces systemic vascular resistance

#### *Dose*

0.2–1 µg/kg/min titrated to effect

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Hypersensitivity to nitrates

Hypotension, hypovolaemia

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

Raised ICP

Obstructive cardiomyopathy

### *Side effects*

Hypotension, tachycardia, sweating, headache, nausea, vomiting, restlessness

### **Heparin**

Naturally occurring anti-coagulant which inhibits clotting factors including thrombin by accelerating complexes formed with anti-thrombin III and heparin co-factor II and inactivates factor X

### *Uses*

- Anti-coagulant in extra-corporeal circuits and arterial lines
- Prophylaxis for DVT and pulmonary embolus

### *Dose*

Prophylaxis 75 units/kg calcium heparin s/c

Heparinisation 50–100 units/kg loading dose

IV infusion for embolism    25 units/kg/h <1 year  
   20 units/kg/h >1 year

Requires monitoring with activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT)  
1.5–2.5 × normal

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Haemorrhagic disorders

GI bleed including peptic ulcer

Recent cerebral haemorrhage

Severe hypertension

Severe liver or renal disease

Post major trauma or surgery

### *Side effects*

Haemorrhage, anaphylactic shock, thrombocytopenia

Skin necrosis

### **Hydrocortisone**

Corticosteroid

### *Uses*

- Anaphylaxis
- Asthma
- *Haemophilus meningitis* (? Other meningitis)

*Dose*

2.5 mg/kg bolus; 2 mg/kg qds IV <1 month

4 mg/kg bolus; 2–4 mg/kg tds IV 1 month–12 years

100–500 mg bolus then qds >12 years

*Contra-indications/warnings*

See Dexamethasone

**Ibuprofen**

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory analgesic

*Uses*

- Pain
- Anti-pyretic

*Dose*

5 mg/kg po qds

*Contra-indications/warnings*

GI bleeds

Hypersensitivity to aspirin

Care in renal failure/hepatic failure

*Side effects*

GI disturbance, nausea

Headache, dizziness, vertigo

**Ipratropium bromide**

Anti-cholinergic bronchodilator

*Use*

- Acts via parasympathetic nervous system on smooth muscle in lungs. Does seem to be more effective at a younger age than salbutamol nebuliser.

*Dose*

125 µg <1 year

250 µg <1–5 years

500 µg >5 years

Can be given 2 hourly in severe asthma but usually qds

*Contra-indications/side effects*

Can occasionally worsen bronchospasm

Atropine like side effects: dry mouth, constipation, urinary retention

## **Ketamine**

Dissociative anaesthetic

### *Uses*

- Analgesia
- Induction of anaesthesia without hypotensive effects

### *Dose*

1–2 mg/kg IV

3–10 mg/kg IM

10–45 µg/kg/min IV infusion for sedation

4 µg/kg/min IV infusion for analgesia

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Hypertension

Intra-cranial pressure due to increased cerebral blood flow

Pulmonary hypertension

### *Side effects*

Evaluation of blood pressure and heart rate (release of endogenous catecholamines)

Nightmares and hallucinations (reduced by benzodiazepines)

Pain on injection

## **Labetalol**

Combined  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  adrenoceptor antagonist lowers blood pressure by reducing peripheral resistance and blocking the heart from reflex sympathetic stimulation

### *Use*

- Hypertension

### *Dose*

1–2 mg/kg po bd–tds maximum 300 mg

0.5–3 mg/kg/h IV infusion after loading of 0.25–0.5 mg/kg

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Cardiogenic shock

Heart block

Asthma

### *Side effects*

Bradycardia, hypotension

Heart failure

## **Lorazepam**

Benzodiazepine

### *Uses*

- Sedation
- Anti-convulsant

### *Dose*

0.05–0.1 mg/kg <12 years  
4 mg >12 years

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Enhances other sedatives or opiates

### *Side effects*

Drowsiness, sedation

Respiratory depression (seems commoner in patients with status epilepticus needing a second dose)

Amnesia

## **Magnesium sulphate**

### *Uses*

- Magnesium supplements
- Hypertension including persistent pulmonary hypertension
- Asthma

### *Dose*

0.2 mmol/kg

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

High levels cause sedation and muscle relaxation

Interaction with non-depolarising muscle relaxants

Rapid IV injection can lead to respiratory or cardiac arrest

Renal impairment leads to high levels

### *Side effects*

Related to serum level

- Nausea and vomiting, slurred speech 4–6.5 mmol/l
- Muscle weakness, respiratory arrest 6.5–7.5 mmol/l
- Cardiac arrest >10 mmol/l

## **Mannitol**

Osmotic diuretic available as 10% or 20%

### *Uses*

- Raised intra-cranial pressure if serum osmolality <300 mosm/l

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

- Oedema including ascites
- Prevention of renal failure in jaundiced patients

### *Dose*

250 mg–1.5 g/kg. Max 2 g/kg/day IV.

### *Contra-indications*

Inadequate urine flow

Pulmonary oedema or congestive heart failure

Dehydration or acidosis

Intra-cranial bleeding (relative)

### *Interactions*

Oral anti-coagulants may have reduced effect

Hypokalaemia may lead to digoxin toxicity

### *Side effects*

Fluid and electrolyte imbalance

Pulmonary oedema

CNS toxicity with overdose

## **Meropenem**

Carbapenem  $\beta$ -lactam antibiotic

### *Uses*

- very broad spectrum – gram-positive and gram-negative including anaerobes
- inactive against methicillin resistant staphylococcus aureus (MRSA)
- reserved for infections resistant to other antibiotics

### *Dose*

20 mg/kg IV tds for pneumonia, peritonitis, septicaemia

40 mg/kg IV tds for meningitis and life threatening infections

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Allergy

Renal failure reduce dose frequency; removed by haemodialysis

Care in patients with liver disease

### *Side effects*

Thrombophlebitis, skin rashes, gastrointestinal upset, raised LFT's, pseudomembranous colitis rarely, reversible haematological features – neutropenia

## **Metronidazole**

Antimicrobial

### *Use*

- anaerobic bacterial and protozoal infections



*Dose*

7.5 mg/kg IV tds (bd in neonates)

*Contra-indications*

Care in renal and hepatic failure, potentiates warfarin, phenytoin, alcohol

*Side effects*

Nausea, vomiting, GI disturbances, darkening of urine, drowsiness, dizziness, headache, ataxia, seizures (rarely)

**Midazolam**

Water soluble benzodiazepine

*Uses*

- Sedation and anxiolysis
- Anti-convulsant

*Dose*

Bolus 50–100 µg/kg/min

Intra-venous infusion 120–360 µg/kg/min

*Contra-indications/warnings*

- Can accumulate leading to prolonged sedation
- Abrupt withdrawal can lead to an acute withdrawal syndrome therefore reduce infusion slowly
- Care in patients with hepatic and renal dysfunction

*Side effects*

Oversedation

Hypotension

Respiratory depression

Enhanced effects in hepatic failure

*Interactions*

Midazolam is metabolised by cytochrome P450 in the liver and therefore is affected by enzyme inducers and inhibitors. Therefore effects are increased by erythromycin, cimetidine, metronidazole and fluconazole.

**Milrinone**

Selective phosphodiesterase inhibitor

*Use*

- Congestive cardiac failure. Increases cardiac output, reducing systemic

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

vascular resistance and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure. Does not increase heart rate.

### *Dose*

50 µg/kg loading dose over 10 min then

0.375–0.75 µg/kg/min

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Atrial flutter or fibrillation – may increase ventricular rate

Reduce dose in renal failure

### *Side effects*

Hypotension

Arrhythmias

## **Morphine**

Opiate analgesic

### *Use*

- Analgesia and sedation

### *Dose*

0.1–0.2 mg/kg IV bolus

10–80 µg/kg/h IV infusion if ventilated

Reduce dose in neonates and infants and if not ventilated. Titrate to response.

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Care in patients with respiratory depression, raised intra-cranial pressure or head injury if not ventilated

Liver and renal impairment

### *Side effects*

Nausea and vomiting, ileus, biliary spasm

Hypotension

Increased susceptibility to respiratory depression in neonates

## **Naloxone**

Opioid antagonist. Duration of action 30–45 min.

### *Use*

- Reversal of opioid effects of respiratory depression, sedation, urinary retention, pruritus

*Dose*

10 µg/kg IV if unsuccessful 100 µg/kg (max 2 mg)

Infusion 5–20 µg/kg/h

Titrate dose if post-operative to avoid sudden pain

*Contra-indications/warning*

Post-operatively leading to pain, haemodynamic disturbance

*Side effects*

Arrhythmias, hypertension

**Norepinephrine (Noradrenaline)**

α adrenoceptor mediated vasoconstrictor

*Use*

- Vasoconstriction in sepsis 'warm shock'

*Dose*

0–2 µg/kg/min via central catheter

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Normovolaemia

Extravasation

*Side effects*

Hypertension with bradycardia

Headache

Peripheral gangrene

**Nystatin**

Antifungal

*Use*

- Prevention and treatment of candida infection

*Dose*

1 ml qds orally

*Side effects*

Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea rarely rashes

**Ondansetron**

5HT<sub>3</sub> antagonist

*Use*

- Post-operative and chemotherapy induced anti-emetic

*Dose*

0.1 mg/kg IV slowly tds max 8 mg

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### *Side effects*

Headaches, flushing, constipation

Care in hepatic failure (increases liver enzymes)

### **Pancuronium**

Non-depolarising neuromuscular blockade with medium duration of action (40 min plus). Causes increase in blood pressure and heart rate.

#### *Use*

- Muscle relaxation

#### *Dose*

0.1 mg/kg bolus

0.1 mg/kg/h infusion

### *Side effects*

Hypertension and tachycardia

Prolonged paralysis in hepatic or renal failure

Effects prolonged by aminoglycosides, magnesium, clindamycin, propranolol

### **Paracetamol**

Analgesic and anti-pyretic

#### *Uses*

- Mild pain
- Anti-pyretic

#### *Dose*

10–30 mg/kg/dose po max total 90 mg/kg/day for 48 h

Max up to 3 months of age 60 mg/kg/day

4–6 hourly po/pr. Larger doses are required rectally.

IV (propacetamol) 30 mg/kg qds

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Risk of hepatic damage with overdose

### **Phenobarbitone**

Barbiturate

#### *Use*

- Epilepsy

#### *Dose*

15 mg/kg IV loading dose (up to 20 mg/kg in neonates)

2.5–5 mg/kg IV bd maintenance

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Reduce dose and measure levels in renal/hepatic disease  
Enzyme inducer reducing effect of many anti-epileptics

*Side effects*

Sedation, ataxia, respiratory depression

**Phenytoin**

Anti-epileptic

*Uses*

- Epilepsy
- Anti-arrhythmic especially for digoxin toxicity

*Dose*

18 mg/kg IV loading dose >1 month  
2.5–7.5 mg/kg po bd maintenance

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Rapid IV administration (severe hypotension or CNS depression)  
Severe liver disease (reduce dose)  
Measure serum levels  
Numerous drug reactions as phenytoin is an enzyme inducer

*Side effects*

Nystagmus, ataxia, slurred speech  
Drowsiness and confusion  
Rashes  
Inducing haematological effects due to folate deficiency  
Gum hypertrophy

**Piperacillin**

Tazocin includes piperacillin and tazobactam which is active against  $\beta$ -lactamase producing bacteria resistant to penicillin

*Uses*

- Pseudomonas infections
- Also gram-negative bacilli including Proteus sp and B fragilis

*Dose*

50–75 mg IV qds in severe infection. Max 4 g/day.  
50–100 mg IV tds in neonates

*Contra-indications*

Allergy to penicillin  
May interact with warfarin and neuro-muscular blocking agents

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### *Side effects*

Rare severe anaphylaxis

Liver disorders, blood dyscrasias, skin rashes

### **Promethazine**

Phenothiazine with anti-histamine and sedative effects

### *Use*

- Sedation

### *Dose*

1–2 mg/kg single dose

0.5–1 mg/kg qds

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Avoid in neonates and premature infants

### *Side effects*

Occasionally irritable or excitable behaviour

Dizziness, restlessness, headaches, extrapyramidal effects

Hypotension, tachycardia

### **Propofol**

Induction agent for general anaesthesia

### *Uses*

- General anaesthesia
- Sedation

### *Dose*

Up to 3.5 mg/kg. Titrate dose to effect as younger and less ill children will need more.

Infusion 4–12 mg/kg/h but not recommended for long-term use in those aged under 16.

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Care in patients with hypovolaemia, epilepsy, severe cardiac or respiratory disease

### *Side effects*

Pain on injection

Hypotension, bradycardia

Apnoea

Convulsions

Fat overload

Has been implicated in propofol infusion syndrome which has led to fatalities due to cerebral problems associated with hyperlipidaemia and metabolic acidosis, mostly associated with children with upper respiratory tract infections.

### **Prostaglandin E1 (Alprostadil)**

#### *Use*

- Maintenance of patent ductus arteriosus in duct-dependent cardiac disease

#### *Dose*

0.01–0.1 µg/kg/min IV infusion

Titrated up to 0.4 µg/kg/min

#### *Side effects*

Apnoea, usually transient

Seizures, fever, diarrhoea

Flushing, bradycardia, hypotension

### **Protamine**

Basic protein which has anti-coagulant effect

#### *Use*

- Combines with acidic heparin to neutralise the effect of heparin

#### *Dose*

1 ml of 1% (10 mg) will neutralise 1000 units of heparin given 15 min before. 1 ml per 25 ml of pumped blood. Give as slow bolus.

#### *Side effects*

- Rapid bolus leads to pulmonary vasoconstriction, reduced left arterial pressure and hypotension
- Flushing, headache, dyspnoea, hypotension

### **Ranitidine**

H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonist

#### *Use*

- Prophylaxis against bleeding from GI tract

#### *Dose*

1 mg/kg tds up to 6 months

125–250 µg/kg/h continuous infusion

Can be added to TPN

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

May mask other gastric diseases

### *Side effects*

Hypersensitivity can vary from urticaria to anaphylactic shock

Rarely acute pancreatitis, leucopenia, thrombocytopenia

Bradycardia and AV block particularly if given rapidly IV

Transient rise in liver function tests

## **Salbutamol**

$\beta_2$  agonist

### *Uses*

- Bronchodilation
- Reduces hyperkalaemia
- Vasodilator

### *Dose*

Nebuliser 2.5–5 mg (1.25–2.5 mg under 1 month)

Can be repeated up to half-hourly for asthma or single dose for hyperkalaemia

IV 15  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$  for status asthmaticus initially

IV infusion 1–5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}/\text{min}$  for status asthmaticus or as a vasodilator

IV bolus 4  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$  hyperkalaemia

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Increased risk of hypokalaemia especially with high dose corticosteroids, diuretics, theophylline

Has caused ketoacidosis in diabetics

### *Side effects*

Usually dose related and more frequent with systemic therapy: hypokalaemia, tremor, nervousness, tachycardia

## **Sodium bicarbonate**

### *Uses*

- Metabolic acidosis
- May be needed in renal replacement therapy
- Cardiac arrest

### *Dose*

$\frac{1}{3} \times \text{base deficit} \times \text{weight} = \text{ml } 8.4\% \text{ sodium bicarbonate}$

Half this dose is given to assess response

In neonates and small infants use 4.2% to reduce the osmolarity

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Do not give with other drugs especially calcium or inotropes

Hypokalaemia may be worsened



*Side effects*

Metabolic alkalosis

Extravasation (give centrally if possible)

Fluid load

**Sodium nitroprusside**

Vasodilator reducing both preload and afterload by direct action on vascular smooth muscle particularly on the arterial side of the circulation

*Use*

- Hypertension

*Dose*

0.5–8 µg/kg/min IV titrated to response

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Severe hepatic impairment

Protect from light

*Side effects*

Headache, dizziness, nausea, palpitations, apprehension, sweating

Reflex tachycardia

Methaemoglobinaemia

Acute withdrawal can cause hypertensive crisis

**Spironolactone**

Aldosterone antagonist, potassium sparing diuretic

*Use*

- Cardiac failure, ascites, potentiation of other diuretics

*Dose*

750 µg–1.5 mg/kg po bd <12 years

25–50 mg >12 years

or IV as potassium canrenoate 1–2 mg/kg bd

Dose conversion: oral spironolactone: IV potassium canrenoate 0.7:1

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Severe renal impairment, hyperkalaemia, Addison's disease

Hyponatraemia

Can worsen potential of other drugs to produce hyperkalaemia

May falsely increase digoxin levels

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### *Side effects*

Renal function deterioration, hyperkalaemia, hyponatraemia, GI disturbances, drowsiness, headache, skin rashes

### **Sucralfate**

Mucosal protector

#### *Use*

- Prevention and treatment of stress ulceration

#### *Dose*

1 month–2 years	250 mg	4–6/day
2–12	500 mg	4–6/day
>12	1 g	4–6/day

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Hypersensitivity

Caution with children with renal impairment due to aluminium absorption

May reduce oral bio-availability of digoxin, warfarin, phenytoin, ciprofloxacin

Avoid antacids within half an hour

Avoid enteral feeds within 1 h

### *Side effects*

Hypersensitivity – pruritus, oedema and urticaria, constipation, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, headache, dizziness, drowsiness

Hyperphosphataemia especially in patients with renal failure

### **Suxamethonium**

Depolarising neuro-muscular blocker. Rapid onset and short duration.

#### *Use*

- Rapid intubation of trachea
- Management of severe post-extubation laryngospasm

#### *Dose*

1–1.5 mg/kg IV for intubation. Need atropine for bradycardia with second dose.

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Hyperkalaemia

Risk of exaggerated rise in potassium may occur:

- Severe burns
- Muscle damage

- Paraplegia and quadraplegia
- Peripheral neuropathy, e.g. Guillain-Barre
- Congenital myopathies
- Disuse atrophy

History of malignant hyperpyrexia

Myasthenia gravis (resistance)

#### *Side effects*

Muscle pain

Bradycardia (especially after second dose)

Hyperkalaemia

Malignant hyperpyrexia trigger

Increase intra-ocular and intra-cranial pressures

Prolonged apnoea with pseudocholinesterase deficiency

### **Teicoplanin**

Glycopeptide antibiotic

#### *Uses*

- Serious gram-positive infections
- Can be used for treatment of infected implanted lines as a lock

#### *Dose*

<1 month	16 mg/kg od loading dose
	8 mg/kg od maintenance
>1 month	10 mg/kg bd for 3 doses
	10 mg/kg od maintenance

#### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Hypersensitivity

Care with ototoxic and nephrotoxic drugs

#### *Side effects*

Irritation on injection

Transient increase in serum creatinine and liver enzymes

Thrombocytopenia and other blood dyscrasias (rare)

Rarely causes ototoxicity or nephrotoxicity

### **Thiopentone**

Barbiturate whose action is terminated by redistribution. Therefore repeated doses cause accumulation.

#### *Uses*

- Induction of anaesthesia
- Status epilepticus

## ESSENTIALS OF PAEDIATRIC INTENSIVE CARE

### *Dose*

2–5 mg IV bolus. May need more in well children

2–8 mg/kg/h IV infusion

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Avoid in porphyria

Hypovolaemia

### *Side effects*

Induces enzymes

Hypotension especially if hypovolaemic

Myocardial depression

Respiratory depression

Hypersensitivity reactions (rare but serious), histamine release

Tissue necrosis from extravasation (alkaline solution)

Intra-arterial injection can lead to limb necrosis

## **Trimeprazine**

Phenothiazine derivative

### *Use*

- Sedation

### *Dose*

2 mg/kg po up to 90 mg maximum tds

### *Contra-indications/warnings*

Avoid in hepatic or renal dysfunction

Epilepsy, hypothyroidism

### *Side effects*

Excitability, dry mouth

## **Vancomycin**

A glycopeptide antibiotic

### *Uses*

- Active against gram-positive bacteria. Used for severe life-threatening infections which other drugs have not treated successfully including MRSA.
- Pseudomembranous colitis

### *Dose*

15 mg/kg loading dose

10 mg/kg maintenance qds

>12 years 500 mg qds max 2 g/24 h

*Contra-indications/warnings*

Care in renal failure (measure levels)

Hypersensitivity

May potentiate other nephrotoxic drugs including aminoglycosides, amphotericin

*Side effects*

Nephrotoxicity

Ototoxicity

Reversible haematological disorders

**Vecuronium**

Non-depolarising muscle relaxant. It has no cardiovascular effects.  
Duration of action 20–30 min.

*Use*

- Muscle relaxation

*Dose*

0.1 mg/kg IV bolus

0.1 mg/kg/h infusion

*Side effects*

May be prolonged in hepatic or renal failure

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

Advanced Life Support Group. Advanced Paediatric Life Support. The Practical Approach. Third edition. London: BMJ Books, 2001.

Duncan A. Paediatric Intensive Care. London: BMJ Books, 1998.

Fuhrman BP, Zimmermann JJ. Pediatric Critical Care. Second edition. St Louis: Mosby, 1998.

McConachie Z. Handbook of ICU Therapy. London: Greenwich Medical Media, 1999.

Paediatric Intensive Care Society. Standards of Bereavement Care. Sheffield: PICS, 2002.

Pearson G. Handbook of Paediatric Intensive Care. London: WB Saunders, 2002.

RCPCH Medicines for Children. London: RCPCH, 1999.

Rogers MC, Helfaer MA. Handbook of Pediatric Intensive Care. Third edition. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1999.

# Index

---



References to drug descriptions in Section 3 are highlighted in *italics*.

- abdominal trauma, 162–163
- accessory muscles, increased work of breathing, 71
- ACE inhibitors, furosemide and, 202
- aciclovir (acyclovir), 117, *181*
- acid-base disorders, 56–59
- acidosis, 57 (Table), 58  
*see also* metabolic acidosis
- activated charcoal, 173
- activated protein C, meningococcal septicaemia, 150
- acute chest syndrome, sickle cell disease, 134
- acute splenic sequestration, 135
- acyclovir (aciclovir), 117, *181*
- adenosine, 98 (Table), *181*
- adrenaline *see* epinephrine
- adrenergic receptors, 41  
  inotropes on, 40 (Table)
- advanced life support algorithm, 16 (Fig.)
- adverse events, transport, 61
- AIDS, 150–153
- air transport, 61
- airway  
*see also* intubation; ventilation  
  neonates, 3  
  obstruction, 72–75  
    lymphoid disease, 152  
    tumours, 137  
  resuscitation, 15  
    trauma, 20  
  tracheostomy, 27
- albumin, 126  
  nephrotic syndrome, 133
- aldosterone, secondary hyperaldosteronism, 53
- alfentanil, 47 (Table), *182*
- alkalinising agents, resuscitation, 19
- alkalosis, 57 (Table), 58–59
- $\alpha_1$ -glycoprotein, drug binding, 8
- $\alpha$ -blockade, pheochromocytoma, 142
- alprostadil *see* prostaglandin
- ambulances, 61, 63–64
- amino acid disorders, 144
- aminoglycosides, furosemide and, 202
- aminophylline, 182  
  asthma, 77  
  cardiovascular effects, 42  
  diuresis, 30, 182  
  poisoning, 172 (Table)
- aminotransferases (transaminases), 126
- amiodarone, *183*  
  resuscitation, 19
- amitriptyline, *183–184*
- ammonia  
  hepatic encephalopathy, 126  
  inborn errors of metabolism, 145
- amoxycillin, *184*  
  pneumonia, 81
- amphetamines, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- amphotericin, *184–185*
- ampicillin, pneumonia, 81
- amylase, diabetic ketoacidosis, 139
- amylnitrite, cyanide poisoning, 169
- anaemia, 134–135  
  HIV infection, 153  
  physiological, 7
- anaesthesia, 44–45  
*see also* epidural anaesthesia;  
  induction of anaesthesia  
  agents on bronchi, 77  
  epiglottitis, 74  
  regional, 46–48
- analgesia, 43–49
- analgesics (oral systemic), 49
- anaphylaxis, epinephrine, 199
- aneurysms, Kawasaki disease, 102
- angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, furosemide and, 202
- anion gap, 57, 144  
  poisoning, 172 (Table)

- anti-arrhythmic drugs, resuscitation, 19
- antibiotics
  - meningitis, 115
  - systemic inflammatory response syndrome, 154
- anti-cholinergic drugs, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- antidiuretic hormone
  - see also* desmopressin
  - syndrome of inappropriate secretion (SIADH), 118
- antidotes, 173
- anti-histamines, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- anti-toxin drugs, bacterial, meningococcal septicaemia, 149
- anuria, 129
- aorta *see* coarctation of aorta
- Apgar score, 10
- apnoea
  - bronchiolitis, 79, 80
  - primary, 10
- apnoea test, 66
- aprotinin, after
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 93
- arginine, for hyperammonaemia, 145
- arrhythmias *see* dysrhythmias
- arterial blood gases
  - see also* oxygen tension
  - asthma, 78
  - head injury, 155 (Table), 160
- arteritis, Kawasaki disease, 102
- ascites, 127–128
- aspiration, pulmonary
  - drowning, 163
  - treatment, 125
- aspirin
  - Kawasaki disease, 102
  - poisoning, 172 (Table)
  - Reye's syndrome, 118
- asthma, 76–78
  - budesonide, 187
  - salbutamol for, 216
- asystole, resuscitation protocol, 17 (Fig.)
- atracurium, 46, 48 (Table), 185
- atrial fibrillation, 97–98
- atrial flutter, 98
- atrial septal defect, 83 (Fig.)
- atrial switch, for transposition of great arteries, 88
- atropine, 185–186
  - poisoning, 172 (Table)
- auscultation, endotracheal intubation, 25
- autopsy, 66
- AVPU scale, 22 (Table), 23, 106, 107 (Table), 156
- azlocillin, 186
- bacteria
  - in HIV infection, 151 (Table)
  - meningitis, 113 (Table)
  - smoke inhalation, 169
- bacterial anti-toxin drugs, meningococcal septicaemia, 149
- basal skull fracture, 156
- benzoate, for
  - hyperammonaemia, 145
- benzodiazepines, 45–46
  - see also specific drugs*
- antidote, 173
- benzylpenicillin, 186–187
  - pneumonia, 81
- β-blockade
  - phaeochromocytoma, 142
  - thyrotoxicosis, 141
- bicarbonate
  - see also* sodium bicarbonate
  - buffer system, 56
- bilirubin, 126
  - neonatal jaundice, 12
- bispectral analysis, 43
- bleeding
  - see also* blood loss
  - after cardio-pulmonary bypass, 93
  - gastrointestinal tract, 122, 127
- blood cultures, endocarditis, 102
- blood gases
  - see also* oxygen tension
  - asthma, 78

- head injury, 155 (Table), 160
- jugular venous bulb
  - monitoring, 159
- blood loss, signs, 22
- blood pressure
  - by age, 5, 5 (Table)
  - renal blood flow and, 129
- blood volume, neonate, 7
- blood-brain barrier, 6
- body compartments, 8
- bolus enteral feeding, 123–124
- bone marrow transplantation, 136–137
- BPD (bronchopulmonary dysplasia), dexamethasone, 194
- bradycardias, 95–97
  - anaesthesia induction, 45
  - hypertension with, 105
- brain insult, 106–118
  - head injury, 106, 155–161
  - neurosurgery, 177
- brain stem death, 66
- breathing
  - neonates, 3–5, 10
  - resuscitation, 15
  - trauma, 21–22
  - tumours, 137
  - work of, 4, 21, 71
- bronchiolitis, 78–80
- bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD), dexamethasone, 194
- brown fat metabolism, 6
- budesonide, 187
- buffers, 56
- bupivacaine, 187–188
- burns, 165–169
- caffeine, 188
  - poisoning, 172 (Table)
- calcium, 53–54
  - after cardio-pulmonary bypass, 93
  - on circulation, 42
  - gluconate, 188
  - for hyperkalaemia, 54 (Fig.)
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 149
  - neonatal myocardium, 5
  - calcium resonium, for hyperkalaemia, 54 (Fig.)
- caloric testing, 66
- capillary leak, cardio-pulmonary bypass, 92, 93 (Table)
- capillary refill time, 5
- captopril, 189
- carbamate insecticides, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- carbohydrate disorders, 145
  - diabetes mellitus
    - complications, 139–141
- carbon dioxide, acid-base balance, 56
- carbon dioxide tension, asthma, 78
- carbon monoxide poisoning, 168–169
- carbonic acid, 56
- carboxyhaemoglobin, 168
- cardiac arrest, 14–19
  - epinephrine, 199
- cardiac conduction abnormalities, 96–97
- cardiac disease *see* heart
- cardiac massage (chest compression), 15
- cardiac output
  - after cardio-pulmonary bypass, 93–94
  - to kidney, 6
  - neonate, 5
- cardiogenic shock, 38–39
  - drowning, 164
- cardiomyopathy, 103–104
- cardio-pulmonary bypass, 92–94
- cardio-pulmonary resuscitation, 14–19
- cardiovascular system
  - children and neonates *vs* adults, 5
  - drowning, 164
  - drug distribution, 8
  - HIV infection, 152
  - hypoxia, 72
  - intermittent positive pressure ventilation on, 28
  - neonates, 11

- cardiovascular system
  - (continued)
  - shock, 37–42
  - trauma resuscitation, 22
- cardioversion, 18 (Fig.), 98 (Table), 100
- carnitine, for
  - hyperammonaemia, 145
- catabolism (hypermetabolic state), 123
- catecholamine receptors, 41
  - inotropes on, 40 (Table)
- catheter-associated infection, endocarditis, 102
- CAVH (haemofiltration), 132
- cefotaxime, 189–190
  - epiglottitis, 75
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147
- ceftazidime, 190
- ceftriaxone, 190
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147
- cefuroxime, 190–191
  - pneumonia, 81
- central capillary refill time, 5
- central nervous system, 5–6, 106–120
  - see also* cerebral oedema
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
  - HIV infection, 153
  - hypoxia, 72
  - neonates, 13
  - neurogenic shock, 38
  - neurosurgery, 177
  - tumours, 137
- cephalosporins, 189
- cerebral oedema
  - diabetic ketoacidosis, 140–141
  - drowning, 164
  - head injury, 160, 161
  - hepatic encephalopathy, 127
- cerebral perfusion pressure, 159, 160
- cerebrospinal fluid, herpes simplex encephalitis, 117–118
- cervical spine, trauma
  - management, 20, 21, 155, 163
- charcoal, activated, 173
- charcoal haemoperfusion, for poisoning, 173
- chemoreceptors, children, 4
- chemotherapy, toxicity, 136
- chest compression, resuscitation, 15
- chest syndrome, acute, sickle cell disease, 134
- chest trauma, 162
- chlamydia, pneumonia, 81
- chloral hydrate, 47 (Table), 191
- chloramphenicol, epiglottitis, 75
- chlorpromazine
  - head injury fever, 161
  - whooping cough, 82
- cholinergic drugs, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- cimetidine, 191–192
  - midazolam and, 209
- ciprofloxacin, 192
- circulation
  - head injury, 156
  - shock, 37–42
  - trauma, 22
- cisapride, fluconazole and, 201
- CIWORA (cervical injury), 21
- clarithromycin, 192–193
- clonidine, 46, 47 (Table), 193
- CMV pneumonitis, HIV infection, 151
- coagulopathy
  - after cardio-pulmonary bypass, 93
  - hepatic failure, 127
- co-amoxiclav, pneumonia, 81
- coarctation of aorta, 89, 90 (Fig.)
  - repair, ischaemic spinal injury, 94
- cocaine, poisoning, 172 (Table), 174
- collars, cervical, 21
  - head injury, 160
- colloid therapy
  - burns, 167
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 148
- COMFORT score, 43

- communication, for transport, 62, 63 (Table)
- compartments, body, 8
- compensated shock, 37 (Table)
- computed tomography (CT)
  - drowning, 165
  - head injury, 157–158
  - trauma, 23
- conduction abnormalities, 96–97
- congenital anomalies, airway
  - obstruction, 72 (Table), 76
- congenital diaphragmatic hernia, 176
- congenital heart disease, 83–94
  - ischaemic heart disease, 102 (Table)
- consciousness *see* mental disability; unconscious child
- continuous positive airways pressure (CPAP), 35–36
- core-peripheral temperature difference, 5
- cornea, amiodarone, 183
- corrosive liquid ingestion, 173
- corticosteroids *see* steroids
- co-trimoxazole, 193
  - pneumonia, 81
- CPAP (continuous positive airways pressure), 35–36
- craniotomy, decompressive, 161
- cricoid cartilage, neonate, 3
- cricoid pressure, 125
- cricoid ring, neonate, 3
- critical illness neuropathy, 121
- croup, 72–74
  - budesonide, 187
  - dexamethasone, 74, 194
- CT *see* computed tomography
- Cushing's triad, 157
- CVVH (haemofiltration), 132, 145
- cyanide poisoning, 169
- cyanosis, 71
  - congenital heart disease, 86
  - tetralogy of Fallot, 89–90, 91 (Table)
- cyclooxygenase inhibitors
  - see also* non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
  - indomethacin, patent ductus arteriosus, 86
- cytokines, systemic inflammatory response syndrome, 153
- cytomegalovirus (CMV)
  - pneumonitis, HIV infection, 151
- dantrolene, hyperthermia from ecstasy, 174
- DC cardioversion, 18 (Fig.), 98 (Table), 100
- DDAVP (desmopressin), 52, 194
- death of child, 65–67
- decompensation, shock, 37 (Table)
- decompressive craniotomy, 161
- defibrillation
  - DC cardioversion, 18 (Fig.), 98 (Table), 100
  - resuscitation protocols, 18 (Fig.)
- dehydration, 50, 51
- desmopressin (DDAVP), 52, 194
- dexamethasone, 194–195
  - croup, 74, 194
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 149
- diabetes insipidus, 118
- diabetes mellitus, complications, 139–141
- diaphragmatic hernia, congenital, 176
- diarrhoea, 123
- diazepam, 195
  - status epilepticus, 113 (Fig.)
- DIC *see* disseminated intravascular coagulation
- diclofenac, 195–196
- digoxin, 42, 196
  - furosemide and, 202
- disability *see* mental disability
- disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 135–136
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 149

- dissociative shock, 39
- distributive shock, 38
- diuretics
  - see also* furosemide
  - aminophylline with furosemide, 30, 182
  - burns, 167
  - for poisoning, 173
  - spironolactone, 217–218
  - ventilation and, 30
- dobutamine, 41, 197
  - action at catecholamine receptors, 40 (Table)
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147, 148
- donation of organs for transplantation, 66
- dopamine, 41, 197–198
  - action at catecholamine receptors, 40 (Table)
- dopaminergic receptors, 41
- inotropes on, 40 (Table)
- dopexamine, 198
  - action at catecholamine receptors, 40 (Table)
- double outlet right ventricle, 91
- drowning, 163–165
- drugs, 181–220
  - see also* poisoning
  - elimination, 8
  - for transport, 63 (Table)
- Duchenne's muscular dystrophy, 121
- ductus arteriosus, 5
  - patent, 11, 85, 86, 87 (Fig.)
  - prostaglandin, 86
- dural tap, epidural block
  - complication, 48 (Table)
- dysrhythmias, 95–101
- drowning, 164
- echocardiography
  - cardiomyopathy, 104
  - endocarditis, 102
- ecstasy, poisoning, 174
- edrophonium, 98 (Table)
- Eisenmenger's syndrome, 86
- electrocardiography, potassium on, 53
- electrocution, 169–170
- electroencephalography (EEG), drowning, 165
- electrolytes, 56–59
- elimination of drugs, 8
- encephalitis, 115–118
- encephalopathy, hepatic, 126–127
- endarteritis, Kawasaki disease, 102
- endocarditis, 102–104
- endotoxin, 153
- endotracheal tubes, 24–27
  - see also* intubation
  - epinephrine via, 18
  - neonate, 3
- energy, daily requirements, 59 (Table)
- enoximone, 42, 198–199
- enteral nutrition, 59–60, 123–124
  - burns, 168
- ephedrine, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- epidural anaesthesia, 46–48
  - bupivacaine, 188
- epidural catheters, intracranial pressure monitoring, 158
- epiglottis, neonate, 3
- epiglottitis, 73 (Table), 74–75
- croup *vs*, 73
- epilepsy, status epilepticus, 106, 107–112, 113 (Fig.)
- epinephrine (adrenaline), 41, 199
  - action at catecholamine receptors, 40 (Table)
  - bronchiolitis, 80
  - croup, 74
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 148
  - post-extubation stridor, 26
  - resuscitation protocols, 17 (Fig.), 18 (Fig.), 18–19
- epoprostenol *see* prostacyclin
- equipment, for transport, 62
- erythromycin, 200

- midazolam and, 209
- pneumonia, 81
- whooping cough, 82
- etomidate, 45 (Table)
- examination, central nervous system, 106–107
- exchange transfusion, 173
- exomphalos, 176–177
- extracellular space, 8
- extracorporeal membrane oxygenation, 33
- extra-dural haemorrhage, 157, 158, 161
- extubation, 25–26
- epiglottitis, 75
- stridor, 26
- dexamethasone, 194
- Fallot's tetralogy, 89–91
- families, death of child, 65–67
- fentanyl, 47 (Table), 200
- epidural anaesthesia, 188
- fetal circulation *see* foetal circulation
- fever, 114–115
  - see also* temperature
  - atropine, 186
  - head injury, 161
- fibreoptic transducers, intracranial pressure monitoring, 158
- fibrinolysis, after cardio-pulmonary bypass, 93
- flail chest, epidural anaesthesia, 47
- flucloxacillin, 200–201
- fluconazole, 201
- midazolam and, 209
- fluid loss, 50–51
  - neonate, signs, 5
  - shock, 38
  - via skin, 6
- fluid requirements, daily, 50
- fluid shifts, drowning, 163
- fluid therapy
  - burns, 167
  - diabetic ketoacidosis, 139
  - ecstasy poisoning, 174
  - electrocution, 170
  - for hypernatraemia, 52
  - for hyponatraemia, 52
  - inotropes and, 40
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147, 148
  - for renal failure, 130
  - resuscitation, 19, 22
- flumazenil, 127, 201–202
- foetal circulation, delayed transition, 5, 11
- follow up appointments, after death of child, 67
- Fontan circulation, 92
- foramen ovale, 5
- fracture, skull, basal, 156
- frusemide *see* furosemide
- full-thickness burns, 167
- furosemide, 202–203
  - chloral hydrate interaction, 191
- galactosaemia, 145
- $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid, hepatic encephalopathy, 126
- ganciclovir, cytomegalovirus pneumonia, 151
- gastric emptying, 7–8
- gastric lavage, 172
- gastrointestinal tract, 122–125
- gastro-oesophageal reflux, 124–125
- gastroschisis, 176–177
- gentamicin, 203
  - pneumonia, 81
- Glasgow Coma Scale, 106, 108 (Table), 156–157
  - treatment stratification, 160
- Glasgow Meningococcal Septicaemia Prognostic Score (GMSPS), 146
- glomerular filtration rate, 6
- glucose metabolism
  - disorders, 138–141
  - head injury, 160
- glyceryl trinitrate, 203–204

- GMSPS (Glasgow Meningococcal Septicaemia Prognostic Score), 146  
 graft versus host disease, 136–137  
 grunting, respiratory, 71  
 Guillain-Barre syndrome, 120
- haematology, 134–137  
   HIV infection, 153  
 haemodialysis, 131–132  
   for poisoning, 173  
 haemofiltration, 132  
   CVVH, 132, 145  
   poisoning, 173  
 haemoglobin F, 7, 32  
 haemoglobinaemia, 133  
 haemoglobinuria, 130  
 haemolysis, neonates, 12 (Table)  
 haemolytic-uraemic syndrome, 132–133  
 haemoperfusion, for poisoning, 173  
*Haemophilus influenzae*,  
   epiglottitis, 74  
 haemorrhage *see* bleeding  
 head injury, 106, 155–161  
 headache, post-dural tap, 48 (Table)  
 heart, 83–94  
   *see also* cardiogenic shock;  
   dysrhythmias; ischaemic  
   heart disease  
   conduction abnormalities,  
     96–97  
 heart block, 96–97  
 heart failure, 39  
 heart rate  
   by age, 5 (Table)  
   resuscitation, 15  
 heat loss, 6–7  
 helicopters, 61  
 helium, croup, 74  
 heparin, 204  
   protamine antagonism, 215  
   reversal after cardio-  
     pulmonary bypass, 93  
 hepatic encephalopathy, 126–127  
 hepatic failure, 125–128  
 hepatitis, viral, 125  
 hepatorenal syndrome, 128  
 herpes simplex encephalitis,  
   116–118  
 high frequency jet ventilation,  
   31  
 high frequency oscillation,  
   30–31  
 H-type tracheo-oesophageal  
   fistula, 176  
 human immunodeficiency virus  
   (HIV) infection, 150–153  
 hydrocortisone, 204–205  
   meningococcal septicaemia,  
     149  
 hyperaldosteronism, secondary,  
   53  
 hyperammonaemia, 145  
 hypercalcaemia, 53–54  
 hypercyanotic spells, tetralogy of  
   Fallot, 89–90, 91 (Table)  
 hyperglycaemia, 145  
   causes, 138 (Table)  
   head injury, 160  
   hyperosmolar non-ketotic  
     coma, 141  
 hyperkalaemia, 53, 54 (Fig.)  
   from acidosis, 57  
   burns, 167  
   salbutamol for, 54 (Fig.), 216  
 hypermagnesaemia, 55  
 hypermetabolic state, 123  
 hypernatraemia, 51–52, 118  
 hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic  
   non-ketotic coma, 141  
 hyperphosphataemia, 55  
 hyperpyrexia, status epilepticus,  
   112  
 hypertension, 104–105  
   phaeochromocytoma, 142  
   tumours, 137  
 hyperthermia  
   ecstasy poisoning, 174  
   head injury, 161  
 hyperthyroidism, 141  
 hypertrophic cardiomyopathy,  
   103–104



- hyperventilation, 57 (Table)
- hypnotics, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- hypocalcaemia, 54
- hypoglycaemia, 141
  - causes, 138 (Table)
  - inborn errors of metabolism, 144
- hypokalaemia, 53
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
- hypomagnesaemia, 55
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 149
- hyponatraemia, 52–53, 118
- hypophosphataemia, 55–56
- hypotension
  - asthma, 78
  - epidural blocks, 48 (Table)
  - head injury, 156
  - neonate, 5
- hypothermia, drowning, 164
- hypothyroidism, 142
- hypovolaemic shock, 38, 51
  
- ibuprofen, 205
- ileus, 122–123
- inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion (SIADH), 118
- inborn errors of metabolism, 143–145
- indomethacin, patent ductus arteriosus, 86
- induction of anaesthesia, 44–45
  - epiglottitis, 74
  - gastro-oesophageal reflux, 124–125
  - head injury, 155
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147
  - tumours, 137
- information, for transport, 62, 63 (Table)
- inhalation
  - anaesthesia, 44
  - drugs
    - absorption, 7
    - asthma, 77
    - epinephrine, 18, 74, 199
    - nitric oxide, 31–32
    - smoke, 168–169
- inotropes, 40–42
  - epinephrine, 199
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147, 148
- insecticides, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- insulin
  - diabetic ketoacidosis, 140
  - hyperglycaemia, 145
- intercostal recession, 71
- interleukin-1, systemic inflammatory response syndrome, 153
- intermittent positive pressure ventilation (IPPV), 28–29
  - congenital heart disease, 86
- intracranial pressure
  - dexamethasone, 194
  - drowning, 165
  - head injury, 157–158, 159–161
  - mannitol, 207
- intramuscular route, 8
- intra-osseous epinephrine doses, 18
- intra-venous anaesthesia
  - induction, 44–45
- intra-venous fluids *see* fluid therapy
- intra-ventricular catheter monitoring, 158
- intra-ventricular haemorrhage, 13, 13 (Table)
- intubation (tracheal), 24–27, 45
  - asthma, 77–78
  - burns, 167
    - indications, 167 (Table)
  - epiglottitis, 74
  - gastro-oesophageal reflux, 124–125
  - head injury, 155–156
  - neonate, 3
  - trauma, 20
  - tumours, 137

- intussusception, 125
- investigations
  - see also specific tests*
  - epiglottitis, 75
  - inborn errors of metabolism, 143–144
  - liver function tests, 126
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147, 150
  - poisoning, 173
  - status epilepticus, 108–109
  - unconscious child, 109 (Table), 110 (Table)
- ipratropium, 77, 205
- iron poisoning, 174
- ischaemia
  - head injury, 106
  - spinal injury, 94
- ischaemic heart disease, 102 (Table)
- neonates, 101
- jaundice, neonates, 11–12
- jugular venous bulb monitoring, 158–159
- junctional ectopic tachycardia, 99
- juxta-glomerular apparatus, 129
- Kawasaki disease, 101–102
- ketamine, 45 (Table), 46, 47 (Table), 206
  - asthma, 78
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147
- ketoacidosis
  - diabetic, 139–141
  - inborn errors of metabolism, 144
- kidney, 6, 129–133
  - see also renal failure*
  - amphotericin on, 185
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
  - dopamine on, 41
  - drug elimination, 8
  - HIV infection, 152
  - labetalol, 206
  - lactic acid, 144
  - lactic:pyruvate ratio, 144
  - laparotomy, trauma, 163
  - laryngoscopy, 45
    - epiglottitis, 74
    - neonate, 3
  - laryngospasm, 26
  - laryngotracheobronchitis *see* croup
  - left ventricle, lesions obstructing, 85
  - left-right shunts, 83–84, 85–86
  - leukaemias, 135
  - lidocaine, ventricular tachycardias, 99
  - life support algorithm, advanced, 16 (Fig.)
  - lignocaine (lidocaine), ventricular tachycardias, 99
  - line-associated infection, endocarditis, 103
  - lipid disorders, 145
  - liquid ventilation, 32–33
  - liver
    - drug elimination, 8
    - failure, 125–128
  - liver function tests, 126
  - lorazepam, 46, 47 (Table), 207
    - status epilepticus, 113 (Fig.)
  - LSD poisoning, 174–175
  - lumbar puncture, herpes simplex encephalitis, 117–118
  - Lund and Browder charts, 166
  - lung injury
    - drowning, 163–164
    - smoke inhalation, 169
  - lymphoid diseases, HIV infection, 152
  - lysergic acid diethylamide poisoning, 174–175
  - magnesium, 55, 207
    - for asthma, 77
    - meningococcal septicaemia, 149
  - malnutrition, 123–124
  - mannitol, 160–161, 207–208

- meningitis, 106, 112–115, 117 (Table)
- meningococcal septicaemia, 146–150
- mental disability
  - see also* unconscious child
  - trauma, 22 (Table), 23
- meropenem, 208
- metabolic acidosis, 57 (Table), 58, 144
- meningococcal septicaemia, 150
- poisons causing, 172 (Table)
- metabolic alkalosis, 57 (Table), 58–59
- metabolism
  - see also* glucose metabolism
  - brown fat, 6
  - hypermetabolic state, 123
  - inborn errors, 143–145
- methaemoglobinaemia, 32
- metronidazole, 208–209
- midazolam and, 209
- midazolam, 45–46, 47 (Table), 209
- milrinone, 41, 42, 209–210
- Mobitz types, heart block, 96
- monitoring
  - head injury, 157, 158
  - jugular venous bulb, 158–159
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 148
- monitoring equipment, for transport, 62
- morphine, 47 (Table), 210
- trauma, 23
- mortality
  - propofol, 46, 215
  - rates, PICU, 65
- multi-system organ failure (MOSF), 154 (Table)
- muscle relaxants (neuro-muscular blockers), 46, 48 (Table)
  - see also specific drugs*
  - anaesthesia induction, 45
  - asthma, 78
  - critical illness neuropathy, 121
  - masking seizures, 111–112
  - neonates, 6, 9
- muscular dystrophy, 121
- Mustard procedure, 88
- myasthenia gravis, 120–121
- mycobacterial pneumonia, 152
- mycoplasma pneumonia, 81
- myelination, 5–6
- myocarditis, 103
- myocardium, 101–104
  - neonatal, calcium, 5
- myoglobinaemia, 133
- myoglobinuria, 130
- naloxone, 48 (Table), 210–211
- nasal endotracheal tubes, 26–27
  - avoidance in head injury, 156
- National Poisons Information Service, 175
- necrotising enterocolitis, 12–13, 124
- neonates, 3–9, 10–13
  - arterial switch for
    - transposition of great arteries, 87–88
  - coarctation of aorta, 89
  - endotracheal tube sizes, 24 (Table)
  - herpes simplex encephalitis, 116
  - ischaemic heart disease, 101
  - meningitis, 115
  - pneumonia, 81 (Table)
- nephrotic syndrome, 133
- nerve blocks, 48
- nerve injuries, cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
- neurogenic shock, 38
- neuro-muscular diseases causing respiratory failure, 118–121
- neuro-muscular junction
  - see also* muscle relaxants
  - neonate, 6
- neurosurgery, 177
- nitric oxide inhalation, 31–32
- nitrogen dioxide, 32
- non-accidental injury, head injury, 155, 161–162

- non-bicarbonate buffer systems, 56
- non-invasive ventilation, 35–36
- non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 49
  - see also specific drugs*
- norepinephrine (noradrenaline), 41, 211
  - action at catecholamine receptors, 40 (Table)
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 148
- nursing staff, for transport, 62
- nutrition, 59–60, 123–124
  - see also malnutrition*
  - burns, 168
- nystatin, 211
- obstructive shock, 39
- oesophageal cardiac pacing, 100
- ondansetron, 211–212
- opiates, 47 (Table)
  - antidote, 173
  - epidural, respiratory
    - depression, 48 (Table)
  - poisoning, 172 (Table)
- oral endotracheal tubes, 26
- oral route, drug absorption, 7
- organic acidaemias, 144
- organophosphates, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- osmotic diuresis, 160–161
- ototoxicity, furosemide, 202
- oxygen tension
  - asthma, 78
  - criteria for ventilation, 27
  - on respiration, 4
- oxygen therapy
  - anaesthesia induction, 45
  - bronchiolitis, 80
  - carbon monoxide poisoning, 169
  - croup, 73
  - prevention of retinopathy, 13, 35
  - toxicity, 35
- oxygenation index, 33
- pacing, cardiac, 100–101
- pain scoring systems, 43
- pancreatitis, 128
- pancuronium, 48 (Table), 212
- pancytopenia, 136
- paracetamol, 212
  - poisoning, 174
- paradoxical embolism,
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
- paraldehyde, status epilepticus, 113 (Fig.)
- parasympathetic stimulation
  - artificial, 98 (Table)
  - bradycardia, 96
- parenteral nutrition, 60, 124
- parents
  - death of child, 65–67
  - transport and, 63
- partial-thickness burns, 167
- patent ductus arteriosus, 11, 85, 86, 87 (Fig.)
- PCP *see Pneumocystis carinii*
- pneumonia
- PEEP *see* positive end-expiratory pressure
- perfluoro-carbons, 32–33
- peritoneal dialysis, 131
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
- pertussis (whooping cough), 81–82
- pH, 56
- phaeochromocytoma, 142
- pharmacodynamics, 7
- pharmacokinetics, 7–8
- phenobarbitone, 212–213
  - status epilepticus, 113 (Fig.)
- phenothiazines, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- phenylbutyrate, for
  - hyperammonaemia, 145
- phenylpropanolamine, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- phenytoin, 213
  - head injury, 161
  - status epilepticus, 113 (Fig.)
- phosphate, 55–56
- phosphodiesterase inhibitors, 42
  - milrinone, 41, 42, 209–210

- phrenic nerve palsy, 120
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
- piperacillin, 213–214
- pituitary disorders, 118
- plasmafiltration, 132
- Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia,
  - 81, 150–151
  - co-trimoxazole, 193
- pneumonias, 80–82
  - HIV infection, 150–152
- poisoning, 171–175
  - carbon monoxide, 168–169
  - cyanide, 169
- poliomyelitis, 119–120
- polycythaemia, neonates, 12
  - (Table)
- positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), 30
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147
- post mortem examination, 66
- post-dural tap headache, 48
  - (Table)
- posterior fossa neurosurgery, 177
- postoperative cardiac
  - management, 92–94
  - endocarditis, 102
  - phrenic nerve palsy, 120
- potassium, 53
  - see also* hyperkalaemia; hypokalaemia
  - burns, 167
  - daily requirements, 51 (Table)
  - diabetic ketoacidosis, 140
  - renal failure, 130
- potassium canrenoate, 217
- premature ventricular contraction, 99
- prematurity
  - endotracheal tube sizes, 24 (Table)
  - heat loss, 7
  - retinopathy, 13, 35
- preoxygenation, anaesthesia induction, 45
- pressure controlled ventilation, 29
- asthma, 78
- primary survey, trauma, 20–23
- promethazine, 214
- propacetamol, 49, 212
- prophylaxis, meningococcal septicaemia, 150
- propofol, 45 (Table), 47 (Table), 214–215
  - infusion syndrome, 215
  - mortality, 46, 215
- propranolol, for thyrotoxicosis, 141
- prostacyclin, 199
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 148–149
- prostaglandin, 215
  - ductus arteriosus, 86
- protamine, 215
- protein binding, drugs, 8
- protein C, meningococcal septicaemia, 149–150
- pseudosubluxation, cervical vertebrae, 21
- pulmonary aspiration
  - drowning, 163
  - treatment, 125
- pulmonary atresia, 91
- pulmonary function, children, 4
- pulmonary hypertension, 86
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
- pulmonary injury
  - drowning, 163–164
  - smoke inhalation, 169
- pulmonary oedema, meningococcal septicaemia, 147
- pulse oximetry, 71
- pulse rate *see* heart rate
- pulseless electrical activity, resuscitation protocol, 17 (Fig.)
- pulseless VT, resuscitation protocol, 18 (Fig.)
- pulsus paradoxus, asthma, 76
- pupils, examination, 106, 157
- pyrexia *see* fever
- pyruvate *see* lactic:pyruvate ratio

- ranitidine, 215–216
- rapid sequence induction, 44
- recession, increased work of breathing, 71
- rectum, drug absorption, 8
- recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy, cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
- redistribution, shock, 38
- regional anaesthesia, 46–48
- renal blood flow, 6, 129
- renal failure, 129–132
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 94
  - cefotaxime dosage, 189
  - HIV infection, 152
  - tumour lysis syndrome, 135
- renal replacement therapy, 130–132
- respiration *see* breathing
- respiratory acidosis, 57 (Table), 58
- respiratory alkalosis, 57 (Table), 58
- respiratory depression, epidural opiates, 48 (Table)
- respiratory diseases, 71–82
  - AIDS, 150–152
- respiratory distress
  - signs, 4–5
  - syndrome, 10–11
- respiratory failure
  - drowning, 163–164
  - neuro-muscular diseases causing, 118–121
- respiratory muscles, 4
- respiratory rates, 4 (Table), 71 (Table)
- respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)
  - bronchiolitis, 79
  - pneumonia, 151
- resuscitation, 14–19
- retinopathy of prematurity, 13, 35
- retrolental fibroplasia (retinopathy of prematurity), 13, 35
- rewarming, drowning, 164
- Reye's syndrome, 118
- ribavirin, bronchiolitis, 80
- right-left shunts, 84–85, 86
- rocuronium, 48 (Table)
- Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health, on withdrawal of intensive care, 65
- RSI (rapid sequence induction), 44
- RSV *see* respiratory syncytial virus
- SAFE acronym, resuscitation, 14
- salbutamol, 77, 216
  - for hyperkalaemia, 54 (Fig.), 216
- salicylates, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- scopolamine, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- scoring systems, sedation and analgesia, 43
- screening, retinopathy of prematurity, 13
- secondary injury, head injury, 106
- secondary survey, trauma, 23
- sedation, 43–49
  - head injury, 161
- sedatives, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- seizures
  - head injury, 161
  - status epilepticus, 106, 107–112, 113 (Fig.)
- Senning procedure, 88
- septic shock, 39
  - see also* meningococcal septicaemia
- septicaemia, meningococcal, 146–150
- sequestration, acute splenic, 135
- severe burns, definition, 165
- shock, 37–42
  - cardiogenic, 38–39
  - drowning, 164
  - diabetic ketoacidosis, 140
  - hypovolaemic, 38, 51
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 148
  - systemic inflammatory response syndrome, 154

- short gut syndrome, 124
- shunts, congenital heart disease, 83–89
- sick euthyroid syndrome, 142
- sick sinus syndrome, 95, 96
- sickle cell disease, 134–135
- sinus bradycardia, 95–96
- sinus tachycardia, 97
- skull fracture, basal, 156
- smoke inhalation, 168–169
- sodium, 51–53, 118
  - daily requirements, 51 (Table)
  - for osmotic diuresis, 161
- sodium benzoate, for
  - hyperammonaemia, 145
- sodium bicarbonate, 216–217
  - hyperammonaemia, 145
  - hyperkalaemia, 54 (Fig.)
  - metabolic acidosis, 58
  - resuscitation, 19
  - tricyclic antidepressant poisoning, 174
- sodium nitrite, cyanide poisoning, 169
- sodium nitroprusside, 217
- sodium phenylbutyrate, for
  - hyperammonaemia, 145
- sodium thiosulphate, cyanide poisoning, 169
- spells (hypercyanotic), tetralogy of Fallot, 89–90, 91 (Table)
- spinal injury, 163
  - cervical, 21
  - ischaemic, coarctation of aorta repair, 94
- spinal muscular atrophy, 120
- spinal surgery, 177
- spironolactone, 217–218
- splenic sequestration, acute, 135
- staffing, transport, 62
- status asthmaticus, salbutamol for, 216
- status epilepticus, 106, 107–112, 113 (Fig.)
- sternal recession, 71
- steroids
  - asthma, 77
  - croup, 74
  - meningitis, 115
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 149
  - Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia, 151
- stomach emptying, 7–8
- stress ulceration, sucralfate for, 218
- stridor after extubation, 26
  - dexamethasone, 194
- stroke volume, neonate, 5
- sub-arachnoid catheters, intracranial pressure monitoring, 158
- sub-dural effusions, 114
- sub-dural haemorrhage, 157, 158, 161
- subglottic oedema/stenosis, 25, 27
- sucralfate, 218
- superficial burns, 167
- supraventricular tachycardia, 97, 98 (Table)
- surface area, burns, 166
- surfactant
  - causes of reduction, 4
  - drowning on, 163
  - therapy with, 31
- suxamethonium, 48 (Table), 218–219
  - bradycardia, 45
  - burns, 167
- sympathomimetics, poisoning, 172 (Table)
- synchronised intermittent mandatory ventilation, 34
- syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion (SIADH), 118
- systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), 153–154
  - cardio-pulmonary bypass, 92
- T piece, weaning to, 34
- tachycardias, 96 (Table), 97
  - bronchiolitis, 79
  - hypertension with, 105
  - junctional ectopic, 99

- tachycardias (continued)
  - ventricular, 96 (Table), 99–100
- tachydysrhythmias, 97–99
  - pacing, 101
- tachypnoea, 71
- tamponade, after cardio-pulmonary bypass, 93
- Tazocin, 213
- teicoplanin, 219
- temperature
  - see also* fever
  - control, 6
  - core-peripheral difference, 5
  - on fluid requirements, 51
  - head injury, 161
  - status epilepticus, 112
- terfenadine, fluconazole and, 201
- tetanus, 119
- tetralogy of Fallot, 89–91
- thiopentone, 45 (Table), 219–220
  - meningococcal septicaemia, 147
  - status epilepticus, 113 (Fig.)
- thoracic trauma, 162
- thyroid crisis, 141
- thyroid disease, 141–142
- thyroid hormones, as inotropes, 42
- thyrotoxicosis, 141
- tonsillar herniation, 159
- torsades de pointes, 99, 100
- total body water, 8
- total central neurological blockade, 48 (Table)
- total parenteral nutrition, 60, 124
- TOXBASE, 175
- toxidromes, 171, 172 (Table)
- tracheal intubation *see* intubation
- tracheitis, bacterial, 73 (Table)
- tracheo-oesophageal fistula, 176
- tracheostomy, 27
- transaminases, 126
- transcutaneous cardiac pacing, 100–101
- transplantation
  - bone marrow, 136–137
  - organ donation, 66
- transport, 61–64
- transposition of great arteries (TGA), 87–89
- transtentorial herniation, 159
- transthoracic cardiac pacing, 100
- trauma, 20–23, 155–170
  - head injury, 106, 155–161
  - shock, 38
- tricuspid atresia, Fontan circulation for, 92
- tricyclic antidepressants, poisoning, 172 (Table), 174
- triiodothyronine (T3), on circulation, 42
- trimeprazine, 220
- tuberculosis, mycobacterial pneumonia, 152
- tumour lysis syndrome, 130, 135
- tumour necrosis factor  $\alpha$ , systemic inflammatory response syndrome, 153
- tumours, 135, 137
- uncompensated shock, 37 (Table)
- unconscious child, 106–112
  - see also* Glasgow Coma Scale; mental disability
  - HIV infection, 153
- urea cycle disorders, 144
- uric acid nephropathy, 130
- urinary catheterisation
  - burns, 167
  - head injury, 161
- vagal stimulation *see* parasympathetic stimulation
- vancomycin, 220–221
- vasoactive substances, 40–42
- vecuronium, 48 (Table), 221
- veno-occlusive disease, bone marrow transplantation, 137
- ventilation (therapy), 27–36
  - asthma, 77–78
  - bronchiolitis, 80



- congenital diaphragmatic hernia, 176
- congenital heart disease, 86
- head injury, 155
- meningococcal septicaemia, 147–148
- neurosurgery, 177
- Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia, 151
- tracheo-oesophageal fistula, 176
- ventricular fibrillation
  - drowning, 164
  - resuscitation protocol, 18 (Fig.)
- ventricular septal defects, 84 (Fig.)
- tetralogy of Fallot, 89
- transposition of great arteries, 87
- ventricular tachycardias, 96 (Table), 99–100
- viral infections
  - encephalitis, 115–118
  - hepatitis, 125
  - in HIV infection, 151 (Table)
  - pneumonia, 151
  - myocarditis, 103
- volume controlled ventilation, 29
- warfarin, flucloxacillin and, 201
- water, total body, 8
- weaning
  - clonidine, 47 (Table)
  - inhaled nitric oxide, 32
  - ventilation, 34–35
- Wenckebach phenomenon, 96
- whole bowel irrigation, 173
- whooping cough, 81–82
- withdrawal of intensive care, 65–66
- withdrawal syndromes
  - benzodiazepines, 46
  - hypertension, 104 (Table)
- Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome, 98
- work of breathing, 4, 21, 71
- X-rays
  - bronchiolitis, 79
  - cervical spine, 21, 163
  - congenital heart disease, 84–85
  - croup, 73
  - endotracheal intubation, 25
  - HIV infection, 152
  - necrotising enterocolitis, 124
  - trauma, 23

---